

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM S-3  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT**  
*UNDER  
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933*

**JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.**  
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Delaware**  
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

**95-4527222**  
(I.R.S. Employer Identification Number)

**2951 28<sup>th</sup> Street**  
**Santa Monica, California 90405 (424) 268-9444**  
(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

**Stephen G. Berman**  
**Chief Executive Officer**  
**2951 28<sup>th</sup> Street**  
**Santa Monica, California 90405 (424) 268-9444**  
(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

**With a copy to:**

**Irving Rothstein, Esq.**  
**Feder Kaszovitz LLP**  
**845 Third Avenue, 11<sup>th</sup> Floor**  
**New York, New York 10022**  
**(212) 888-8200**

**Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to public:** From time to time after the effective date of this Registration Statement, as determined by market conditions and other factors.

---

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box:

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box:

If this form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer", "accelerated filer", "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act:

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Smaller Reporting Company

Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act.

**The Registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the Registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until this Registration Statement shall become effective on such date as the Securities and Exchange Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.**

---

## EXPLANATORY NOTE

This Registration Statement contains two prospectuses:

- a base prospectus which covers the offering, issuance and sale by us of up to \$150,000,000 in the aggregate of the securities identified herein from time to time in one or more offerings, including the at-the-market offering as described below; and
- a sales agreement prospectus covering the offering, issuance and sale by us of up to a maximum aggregate offering price of \$75,000,000 of our common stock that may be issued and sold under an At Market Issuance Sales Agreement, dated October 20, 2022, between us and B. Riley Securities, Inc., as sales agent.

The base prospectus immediately follows this explanatory note. The specific terms of any securities to be offered pursuant to the base prospectus will be specified in a prospectus supplement to the base prospectus. The sales agreement prospectus immediately follows the base prospectus. The \$75,000,000 of common stock that may be offered, issued and sold under the sales agreement prospectus is included in the \$150,000,000 of securities that may be offered, issued and sold by us under the base prospectus. Upon termination of the sales agreement with B. Riley Securities, Inc., any portion of the \$75,000,000 included in the sales agreement prospectus will be available for sale in other offerings pursuant to the base prospectus. If no shares of common stock are sold under the sales agreement prospectus, the full \$150,000,000 of securities may be sold in other offerings pursuant to the base prospectus and an accompanying prospectus supplement to be filed in connection with such offering.

---

**The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. These securities may not be sold until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

**SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED OCTOBER 20, 2022**

**PROSPECTUS**

**\$150,000,000**

**JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.**

**COMMON STOCK  
PREFERRED STOCK  
DEBT SECURITIES  
WARRANTS  
RIGHTS  
UNITS**

By this prospectus and an accompanying prospectus supplement, we may from time to time offer and sell, in one or more offerings, up to \$150,000,000 of our securities in amounts, at prices and on terms that we will determine at the time of the offering.

We will provide you with more specific terms of these securities in one or more supplements to this prospectus. You should read this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement carefully before you invest. These supplements may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. To understand the terms of the securities offered, you should carefully read this prospectus with the applicable supplements, which together provide the specific terms of the securities being offered

We may offer these securities from time to time in amounts, at prices and on other terms to be determined at the time of the offering. We may offer and sell these securities to or through underwriters, dealers or agents, or directly to investors, on a continuous or delayed basis. The supplements to this prospectus will provide the specific terms of the plan of distribution. The price to the public of such securities and the net proceeds we expect to receive from such sale will also be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol "JAKK". On October 14, 2022, the closing price of our common stock was \$18.11 per share.

**Investing in our securities involves risk. See the section entitled "Risk Factors" on page 4 in this prospectus and the risk factors that may be included in the applicable prospectus supplement and in our periodic reports and other documents we file with the Securities and Exchange Commission that are incorporated by reference herein for a discussion of factors you should consider before buying our securities.**

**These securities are not deposits or obligations of a bank or savings association and are not insured or guaranteed by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or any other governmental agency.**

**NEITHER THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION NOR ANY STATE SECURITIES COMMISSION HAS APPROVED OR DISAPPROVED OF THESE SECURITIES OR PASSED UPON THE ADEQUACY OR ACCURACY OF THIS PROSPECTUS. ANY REPRESENTATION TO THE CONTRARY IS A CRIMINAL OFFENSE.**

**This prospectus is dated October 20, 2022.**

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<a href="#"><u>ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</u></a>	1
<a href="#"><u>SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</u></a>	1
<a href="#"><u>AVAILABLE INFORMATION</u></a>	2
<a href="#"><u>INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE</u></a>	2
<a href="#"><u>THE COMPANY</u></a>	3
<a href="#"><u>RISK FACTORS</u></a>	4
<a href="#"><u>USE OF PROCEEDS</u></a>	4
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF COMMON STOCK</u></a>	5
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED STOCK</u></a>	7
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES</u></a>	8
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS</u></a>	20
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS</u></a>	22
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF UNITS</u></a>	23
<a href="#"><u>PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</u></a>	23
<a href="#"><u>LEGAL MATTERS</u></a>	26
<a href="#"><u>EXPERTS</u></a>	26

---

## ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the “Commission” or the “SEC,” using the “shelf” registration process. Under the shelf registration process, over the three year period (or such longer period permitted under SEC rules) from the effective date of the registration statement, using this prospectus, together with a prospectus supplement, we may sell from time to time the securities described in this prospectus in one or more offerings. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities that may be offered. Each time we sell securities pursuant to this prospectus, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of the securities being offered. A prospectus supplement may include a discussion of any risk factors or other special considerations applicable to those securities or to us. The prospectus supplement may also add to, update or change information contained in this prospectus and, accordingly, to the extent inconsistent, the information in this prospectus will be superseded by the information in the prospectus supplement. You should read this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement and the additional information incorporated by reference in this prospectus described below under “Available Information” and “Information Incorporated by Reference” before making an investment in our securities.

This prospectus contains summaries of certain provisions contained in some of the documents described herein, but reference is made to the actual documents for complete information. All of the summaries are qualified in their entirety by the actual documents. Copies of the documents referred to herein have been filed, or will be filed, or incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and you may obtain copies of those documents as described below under “Available Information.”

**Neither the delivery of this prospectus nor any sale made under it implies that there has been no change in our affairs or that the information in this prospectus is correct as of any date after the date of this prospectus. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus, including any information incorporated in this prospectus by reference, the accompanying prospectus supplement or any free writing prospectus prepared by us, is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front of those documents. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since that date.**

In connection with this offering, no person is authorized to give any information or to make any representations not contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. If information is given or representations are made, you may not rely on that information or representations as having been authorized by us. This prospectus is neither an offer to sell nor a solicitation of an offer to buy any securities other than those registered by this prospectus, nor is it an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy securities where an offer or solicitation would be unlawful.

You should not consider any information in this prospectus to be legal, business or tax advice. You should consult your own attorney, business advisor and tax advisor for legal, business and tax advice regarding an investment in our securities.

Unless the context otherwise requires, the terms “we,” “us,” “our,” “JAKKS,” and “the Company” refer to JAKKS Pacific, Inc., a Delaware corporation.

### SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

All statements in this prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference that are not historical facts should be considered “Forward Looking Statements” within the meaning of the “Safe Harbor” provisions of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. Such statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that may cause actual results, performance or achievements of the Company to be materially different from any future results, performance or achievements expressed or implied by the forward-looking statements. Some of the forward-looking statements can be identified by the use words such as “believe,” “expect,” “may,” “estimates,” “should,” “seek,” “approximately,” “intend,” “plan,” “estimate,” “project,” “continue” or “anticipates” or similar expressions or words, or the negatives of those expressions or words. These statements may be made directly in this prospectus and they may also be incorporated by reference in this prospectus from other documents filed with the SEC, and include, but are not limited to, statements about future financial and operating results and performance, statements about our plans, objectives, expectations and intentions with respect to future operations, products and services, and other statements that are not historical facts. These forward-looking statements are based upon the current beliefs and expectations of our management and are inherently subject to significant business, economic and competitive uncertainties and contingencies, many of which are difficult to predict and generally beyond our control. In addition, these forward-looking statements are subject to assumptions with respect to future business strategies and decisions that are subject to change. Actual results may differ materially from the anticipated results discussed in these forward-looking statements.

Certain risks, uncertainties, and other factors are incorporated herein by reference to our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and our subsequent Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, along with the other information contained in this prospectus, as updated by our subsequent filings under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the “Exchange Act.” Except as otherwise required by applicable securities laws, we undertake no obligation to publicly update or revise any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events, changed circumstances, or any other reason, after the date of this prospectus.

#### AVAILABLE INFORMATION

We are subject to the informational requirements of the Exchange Act, and file reports, proxy statements and other information with the Commission. We have also filed a registration statement on Form S-3 with the Commission. This prospectus, which forms part of the registration statement, does not have all of the information contained in the registration statement. The Commission also maintains a website that contains reports, proxy statements and other information, including the registration statement. The website address is: <http://www.sec.gov>.

#### INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The Commission allows us to “incorporate by reference” into this prospectus the information we file with them. The information we incorporate by reference into this prospectus is an important part of this prospectus. Any statement in a document we have filed with the Commission prior to the date of this prospectus and which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus will be considered to be modified or superseded to the extent a statement contained in the prospectus or any other subsequently filed document that is incorporated by reference into this prospectus modifies or supersedes that statement. The modified or superseded statement will not be considered to be a part of this prospectus, except as modified or superseded.

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-3 with respect to the securities offered hereby. This prospectus does not contain all the information set forth in the registration statement, parts of which are omitted in accordance with the rules and regulations of the SEC. For further information with respect to us and the securities offered hereby, reference is also made to such registration statement.

We incorporate by reference into this prospectus the information contained in the following documents, which is considered to be a part of this prospectus:

- Our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended [December 31, 2021](#).
- Our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended [March 31, 2022](#).
- Our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended [June 30, 2022](#).
- Our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed on [February 17, 2022](#), [April 1, 2022](#), [May 2, 2022](#), [July 28, 2022](#) and [August 4, 2022](#).
- The description of our common stock contained in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A (File No. 0-28104), filed March 29, 1996, and as incorporated therein by reference to our Registration Statement on Form SB-2 (Reg. No. 333-2048-LA).

All documents subsequently filed by us with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 and 15(d) of the Exchange Act (other than current reports on Form 8-K furnished pursuant to Item 2.02 or Item 7.01 of Form 8-K, including any exhibits included with such information, unless otherwise indicated therein) prior to the termination or completion of the offering made pursuant to this prospectus are also incorporated herein by reference and will automatically update and supersede information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus.

We will provide each person to whom a copy of this prospectus has been delivered, without charge, upon receipt of a written or oral request, a copy of any of the documents referred to above as being incorporated by reference. You may request a copy by writing or telephoning John L. Kimble, c/o JAKKS Pacific, Inc., 2951 28<sup>th</sup> Street, Santa Monica, California, 90405 (telephone: 424-268-9444).

The statements that we make in this prospectus or in any document incorporated by reference in this prospectus about the contents of any other documents are not necessarily complete and are qualified in their entirety by referring you to copies of those documents that are filed as exhibits to the registration statement, of which this prospectus forms a part, or as an exhibit to the documents incorporated by reference. You can obtain copies of these documents from the SEC or from us, as described above.

## THE COMPANY

### About JAKKS

We are a leading multi-line, multi-brand toy company that designs, produces, markets, sells and distributes toys and related products, consumables and related products, electronics and related products, kids indoor and outdoor furniture, and other consumer products. We focus our business on acquiring or licensing well-recognized intellectual property (“IP”), trademarks and/or brand names, most with long product histories (“evergreen brands”). We seek to acquire/license these evergreen brands because we believe they are less subject to market fads or trends. We also develop proprietary products marketed under our own trademarks and brand names and have historically acquired complementary businesses to further grow our portfolio. For accounting purposes, our products have been divided into two segments: (i) Toys/Consumer Products and (ii) Costumes. Our products include:

- Action figures and accessories, including licensed characters based on the Nintendo®, Sonic the Hedgehog® and Apex Legends® franchises and our own proprietary brands including Creepy Crawlers™;
- Toy vehicles, including Xtreme Power Dozer®, Xtreme Power Dump Truck®, XPV®, Road Champs®, Fly Wheels® and MXS® toy vehicles and accessories;
- Dolls and accessories, including small dolls, large dolls, fashion dolls and baby dolls based on licenses, including Disney Encanto™, Disney ILY 4EVER™, Disney Frozen®, Disney Princess® and Minnie Mouse®, and infant and pre-school toys based on TV shows like PBS’s Daniel Tiger’s Neighborhood®;
- Private label products developed exclusively for certain retail customers in various product categories;
- Foot-to-floor ride-on products, including those based on Fisher-Price®, Nickelodeon®, and Hasbro®/Entertainment One® licenses and inflatable environments, tents and wagons;
- Role play, dress-up, pretend play and novelty products for boys and girls based on well-known brands and entertainment properties such as Disney Frozen®, Black & Decker®, Disney Princess®, and Disney Encanto™, as well as those based on our own proprietary brands;
- Indoor and outdoor kids’ furniture, activity trays and tables and room décor; kiddie pools, seasonal and outdoor products, including those based on Disney® characters, Nickelodeon®, Hasbro®/Entertainment One® licenses;
- Halloween and everyday costumes for all ages based on licensed and proprietary non-licensed brands, including Super Mario Bros.®, Microsoft’s Halo®, LEGO® Movie, Disney-Pixar Toy Story®, Harry Potter®, Jurassic World®, Sesame Street®, Power Rangers®, Hasbro® brands and Disney Frozen®, Disney Princess® and related Halloween accessories; and
- Outdoor activity toys including Redo Skateboard Co.® and Junior sports toys including Skyball® hyper-charged balls, sport sets and Wave Hoops® toy hoops marketed under our Maui® brand.

We continually review the marketplace to identify and evaluate popular and evergreen brands and product categories that we believe have the potential for growth. We endeavor to generate growth within these lines by:

- creating innovative products under our established licenses and brand names;
- adding new items to the branded product lines that we expect will enjoy greater popularity;
- infusing innovation and technology when appropriate to make products more appealing to today’s kids; and
- expanding our international product offering either sold directly to retailers or via third party distributors.



## **Business Strategy**

In addition to developing our own proprietary brands, properties and marks, licensing popular IP enables us to use these high-profile marks at a lower cost than we would incur if we purchased these marks or funded the development of comparable marks on our own. Beyond the investment profile, we have an appreciation of the challenges and expertise required to break through the noise in a world filled with high-budget, content-centric consumer choices either based on well-known pre-existing IP or the even higher hurdle to launch new IP in the aforementioned marketplace. By licensing IP and trademarks from world-class brand owners and content creators, we have access to a far greater range of marks than would be available for purchase. It also helps to credibly assure licensors that we will prioritize their brands, properties and IP rather than explicitly competing with them with a broad-range of self-developed content-led offerings. We also license technology developed by unaffiliated inventors and product developers to enhance the design, innovation and functionality of our products.

We sell our products through our in-house sales staff and independent sales representatives to toy and mass-market retail chain stores, department stores, office supply stores, drug and grocery store chains, club stores, value-oriented dollar stores, toy specialty stores and wholesalers. Our two largest customers are Walmart® and Target®, which accounted for 26.9% and 28.4%, respectively, of our net sales in 2021. No other customer accounted for more than 10% of our net sales in 2021.

## **Corporate Information**

We were formed as a Delaware corporation in 1995. Our principal executive offices are located at 2951 28th Street, Santa Monica, California 90405. Our telephone number is (424) 268-9444 and our Internet Website address is [www.jakks.com](http://www.jakks.com). The contents of our website are not incorporated in or deemed to be a part of this Prospectus.

## **RISK FACTORS**

Investing in our securities involves risk. You should carefully consider the specific risks discussed or incorporated by reference in the applicable prospectus supplement or in this prospectus, together with all the other information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or in an applicable prospectus supplement. In particular, you should consider the risks, uncertainties and assumptions discussed under the caption “Risk Factors” and elsewhere included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2021 which are incorporated by reference in this prospectus and may be amended, supplemented or superseded from time to time by other reports we file with the SEC in the future. Our business, financial condition or results of operations could be materially adversely affected by any of these risks. The market or trading price of our securities could decline due to any of these risks, and you may lose all or part of your investment. In addition, please read the section of this prospectus captioned “Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements,” in which we describe additional uncertainties associated with our business and the forward-looking statements included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. Please note that additional risks not presently known to us or that we currently deem immaterial may also impair our business and operations.

Investment in any securities offered pursuant to this prospectus involves risks and uncertainties. If one or more of the events discussed in the risk factors were to occur, our business, financial condition, results of operations or liquidity, as well as the value of an investment in our securities, could be materially adversely affected.

## **USE OF PROCEEDS**

Except as otherwise set forth in a prospectus supplement or in other offering materials we intend to use the net proceeds from the sale of our securities for general corporate purposes, which may include repayment or refinancing of indebtedness, capital expenditures and working capital. Pursuant to the terms of our existing loan documents, we may be required to use the funds raised hereunder to make mandatory, penalty free, prepayments of our 2021 BSP Term Loan (as defined below). Pending any of these uses, the net proceeds of a sale will be held in interest-bearing bank accounts or invested in readily marketable, interest-bearing securities. The applicable prospectus supplement will provide more details on the use of proceeds of any specific offering. If any of the net proceeds from the offered securities will be used for acquisitions, we will identify the acquisition in the applicable prospectus supplement.

On June 2, 2021, we, and certain of our subsidiaries, as borrowers, entered into a First Lien Term Loan Facility Credit Agreement with Benefit Street Partners L.L.C., as Sole Lead Arranger, and BSP Agency, LLC, as agent, for a \$99.0 million first-lien secured term loan (the “2021 BSP Term Loan”). Amounts outstanding under the 2021 BSP Term Loan will bear interest at either (i) LIBOR plus 6.50% - 7.00% (determined by reference to a net leverage pricing grid), subject to a 1.00% LIBOR floor, or (ii) base rate plus 5.50% - 6.00% (determined by reference to a net leverage pricing grid), subject to a 2.00% base rate floor. The 2021 BSP Term Loan matures in June 2027. On June 27, 2022, as permitted by the terms of the 2021 BSP Term Loan, we made a voluntary fee-free \$10.0 million prepayment towards the outstanding principal amount of the 2021 BSP Term Loan and on September 28, 2022 we made an additional voluntary prepayment of \$17.5 million. As of October 14, 2022, \$69.5 million is outstanding under the 2021 BSP Term Loan.

## **DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK**

The following statements relating to our capital stock do not purport to be complete, and are subject to, and are qualified in their entirety by reference to, the provisions of the Certificate of Incorporation, as amended and restated, or the “Certificate,” and By-Laws, as amended, or the “By-Laws,” which are incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

### **General**

The Certificate authorizes a total of 105,000,000 shares of capital stock, of which 100,000,000 may be shares of common stock and 5,000,000 may be shares of preferred stock.

As of October 14, 2022, 9,723,534 shares of common stock were issued and outstanding and an aggregate of 1,217,777 shares of common stock subject to unvested Restricted Stock Units issued to directors, employees, consultants and lenders remained outstanding.

As of September 28, 2022, there were 80 holders of record of our common stock, which excludes beneficial owners of our common stock whose shares are held in “street name.”

### **Common Stock**

Subject to the rights of the holders of any shares of preferred stock that may at the time be outstanding, if any, record holders of common stock are entitled to such dividends as the Board of Directors may declare. Holders of common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held in their name on all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders and do not have preemptive rights or cumulative voting rights. Holders of common stock are not subject to further calls or assessments as a result of their holding shares of common stock.

If JAKKS is liquidated, the holders of shares of common stock are entitled to share ratably in the distribution remaining after payment of debts and expenses and of the amounts to be paid on liquidation to the holders of shares of preferred stock.

The transfer agent for our common stock is Computershare Inc., Canton, MA.

### **Certain Other Provisions of the Certificate**

Delaware law permits a corporation to eliminate the personal liability of its directors to the corporation or to any of its stockholders for monetary damages for a breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except (i) for breach of the director's duty of loyalty, (ii) for acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law, (iii) for certain unlawful dividends and stock repurchases or (iv) for any transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit. The Certificate provides for such limitation of liability.

The Certificate does not permit stockholder action by written consent in lieu of a meeting of stockholders. In addition, special meetings of stockholders may be called only by the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer or the President.

## **Limitations on Directors' Liability**

Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that the personal liability of our directors shall be limited to the fullest extent permitted by the provisions of Section 102(b)(7) of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (“DGCL”). Section 102(b)(7) of the DGCL generally provides that no director shall be liable personally to a company or its security holders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, provided that the certificate of incorporation does not eliminate the liability of a director for (1) any breach of the director’s duty of loyalty to it or its security holders; (2) acts or omissions not in good faith or that involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law; (3) acts or omissions in respect of certain unlawful dividend payments or stock redemptions or repurchases; or (4) any transaction from which such director derives an improper personal benefit. The effect of this provision is to eliminate the rights of a company and its security holders to recover monetary damages against a director for breach of her or his fiduciary duty of care as a director (including breaches resulting from negligent or grossly negligent behavior) except in the situations described in clauses (1) through (4) above. The limitations summarized above, however, do not affect the ability of a company or its security holders to seek nonmonetary remedies, such as an injunction or rescission, against a director for breach of her or his fiduciary duty.

## **Indemnification of Directors and Officers**

In addition, our certificate of incorporation provides that we shall, to the fullest extent permitted by Section 145 of the DGCL, indemnify all persons whom it may indemnify pursuant to Section 145 of the DGCL. In general, Section 145 of the DGCL permits us to indemnify our directors, officers, employees or agents or, when so serving at our request, as directors, officers, agents or employees of another company, who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any proceeding because of his or her position, if he or she acted in good faith and in a manner reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to our best interests and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his or her conduct was unlawful.

We maintain a directors’ and officers’ liability insurance policy covering certain liabilities that may be incurred by any director or officer in connection with the performance of his or her duties and certain liabilities that we may incur, including the indemnification payable to any director or officer. This policy provides for \$60.0 million in maximum aggregate coverage, including defense costs. We pay the entire premium for such insurance.

## **Exchange Listing**

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol “JAKK.”

## **Anti-Takeover Effects of Delaware Law**

JAKKS is subject to the “business combination” provisions of Section 203 of Delaware law. In general, such provisions prohibit a publicly held Delaware corporation from engaging in various “business combination” transactions with any interested stockholder for a period of three years after the date of the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder, unless

- prior to the date the interested stockholder obtained such status, the Board of Directors of the corporation approved either the business combination or the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder;
- upon consummation of the transaction which resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the stockholder owned at least 85% of the voting stock of the corporation outstanding at the time the transaction commenced; or
- on or subsequent to such date, the business combination is approved by the Board of Directors of the corporation and authorized at an annual or special meeting of stockholders by the affirmative vote of at least 66 2/3% of the outstanding voting stock which is not owned by the interested stockholder.

A “business combination” is defined to include mergers, asset sales and other transactions resulting in financial benefit to an interested stockholder. In general, an “interested stockholder” is a person who, together with affiliates and associates, owns (or within three years, did own) 15% or more of a corporation’s voting stock. The statute could prohibit or delay mergers or other takeover or change in control attempts with respect to JAKKS and, accordingly, may discourage attempts to acquire JAKKS even though such a transaction may offer JAKKS’ stockholders the opportunity to sell their stock at a price above the prevailing market price.

## PREFERRED STOCK

As of the date hereof, 200,000 shares of Series A Senior Preferred Stock (the “Series A preferred Stock”) were issued or outstanding out of the 5 million shares of preferred stock authorized by our Certificate of Incorporation.

Each share of Series A Preferred Stock has an initial value of \$100 per share, which is automatically increased for any accrued and unpaid dividends (the “Accreted Value”).

The Series A Preferred Stock has the right to receive dividends on a quarterly basis equal to 6.0% per annum, payable in cash or, if not paid in cash, by an automatic accretion of the Series A Preferred Stock. No cash dividends have been declared or paid. As of June 30, 2022, the Company recorded \$3.8 million in accrued stock preferred dividends. As of June 30, the Company recorded \$15,897,835 as the value of the Series A Preferred Stock. The Accreted Value is \$20 million.

The Series A Preferred Stock has no stated maturity, however, the Company has the right to redeem all or a portion of the Series A Preferred Stock at its Liquidation Preference (as defined below) upon payment in full of the 2021 BSP Term Loan (or any successor thereto). In addition, upon the occurrence of certain change of control type events, holders of the Series A Preferred Stock are entitled to receive an amount (the “Liquidation Preference”), in preference to holders of Common Stock or other junior stock, equal to (i) 20% of the Accreted Value in the case of a certain specified transaction, or (ii) otherwise, 150% of the Accreted value, plus any accrued and unpaid dividends.

The Series A Preferred Stock does not have any voting rights, except to the extent required by the Delaware General Corporation Law, except for certain approval rights over certain transactions (as described below). These approval rights require the prior consent of specified percentages of holders (or in certain cases, all holders) of the Series A Preferred Stock in order for the Company to take certain actions, including the issuance of additional shares of Series A Preferred Stock or parity stock, the issuance of senior stock, certain amendments to the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, the Certificate of Designations of the Series A Preferred Stock (the “Certificate of Designations”), the Second Amended and Restated By-laws or the Amended and Restated Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee Charter, material changes in the Company’s line of business and certain change of control type transactions. In addition, the Certificate of Designations provides that the approval of at least six directors is required for any related person transaction within the meaning of Item 404 of Regulation S-K under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, including, without limitation, the adoption of, or any amendment, modification or waiver of, any agreement or arrangement related to any such transaction. The Certificate of Designations also includes restrictions on the ability of the Company to pay dividends on or make distributions with respect to, or redeem or repurchase, shares of Common Stock or other junior stock. In addition, holders of the Series A Preferred Stock have preemptive rights regarding future issuance of Series A Preferred Stock or parity stock.

The Certificate of Incorporation authorizes our board of directors to establish one or more series of Preferred Stock. Unless required by law or any stock exchange, the authorized shares of Preferred Stock will be available for issuance without further action by the holders of our common stock. Subject to some rights held by our current preferred stockholders, our board of directors has the discretion to determine the powers, preferences and relative, participating, optional and other special rights, including voting rights, dividend rights, conversion rights, redemption privileges and liquidation preferences, of each series of Preferred Stock.

The issuance of Preferred Stock may have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of the Company without further action by the stockholders. Additionally, the issuance of Preferred Stock may adversely affect the holders of our common stock by restricting dividends on the common stock, diluting the voting power of the common stock or subordinating the liquidation rights of the common stock. As a result of these or other factors, the issuance of Preferred Stock could have an adverse impact on the market price of our common stock.

## DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

We may issue debt securities either separately, or together with, or upon the conversion or exercise of or in exchange for, other securities described in this prospectus. Debt securities may be our senior, senior subordinated or subordinated obligations and may be issued in one or more series. Unless otherwise expressly stated in an accompanying prospectus supplement, the debt securities will represent our general, unsecured obligations and will rank equally with all of our other unsecured indebtedness.

Any debt securities that we issue will be issued under an indenture that will be entered into between us and a bank or trust company, or other trustee that is qualified to act under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (the "TIA"), which we select to act as trustee. A copy of the indenture (the "Indenture") will be filed as an exhibit to a prospectus supplement to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. The Indenture may be modified by one or more supplemental indentures, which we will incorporate by reference as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. Any debt securities that we issue will include those stated in the Indenture (including any supplemental indentures that specify the terms of a particular series of debt securities) as well as those made part of the Indenture by reference to the TIA, as in effect on the date of the Indenture. The Indenture will be subject to and governed by the terms of the TIA.

The following description and any description in an accompanying prospectus supplement is a summary only and is subject to, and qualified in its entirety by reference to the terms and provisions of the indentures and any supplemental indentures that we file with the SEC in connection with an issuance of any series of debt securities. You should read all of the provisions of the Indentures, including the definitions of certain terms, as well as any supplemental indentures that we file with the SEC in connection with the issuance of any series of debt securities. These summaries set forth certain general terms and provisions of the securities to which any accompanying prospectus supplement may relate. The specific terms and provisions of a series of debt securities and the extent to which the general terms and provisions may also apply to a particular series of debt securities will be described in the accompanying prospectus supplement. Copies of the Indenture may be obtained from us or the Trustee.

### General

We may issue the debt securities in one or more series, with the same or various maturities, at par or at a discount. We will describe the particular terms of each series of debt securities in an accompanying prospectus supplement relating to that series, which we will file with the SEC. Please read the accompanying prospectus supplement relating to the series of debt securities being offered for specific terms including, when applicable:

- the title of the debt securities of the series;
- the price or prices (expressed as a percentage of the principal amount thereof) at which debt securities of the series will be issued;
- any limit on the aggregate principal amount of that series of debt securities;
- whether such securities rank as senior debt securities, senior subordinated debt securities or subordinated debt securities;
- the terms and conditions, if any, upon which the debt securities of the series shall be exchanged for or converted into other of our securities or securities of another person;
- if the debt securities of the series will be secured by any collateral and, if so, a general description of the collateral and the terms and provisions of such collateral security, pledge or other agreements;
- the date or dates on which we will pay the principal of the debt securities of the series;
- the rate or rates, which may be fixed or variable, at which debt securities of the series will bear interest, if any, or the method or methods, if applicable, used to determine those rates, the date or dates, if any, from which interest on the debt securities of the series will begin to accrue, or the method or methods, if any, used to determine those dates, the dates on which the interest, if any, on the debt securities of the series will be payable and the record dates for the payment of interest;

- the manner in which the amounts of payment of principal of or interest, if any, of the debt securities of the series will be determined, if such amounts may be determined by reference to an index based on a currency or currencies or by reference to a currency exchange rate, commodity, commodity index, stock exchange index or financial index;
- if other than the corporate trust office of the Trustee, the place or places where amounts due on the debt securities of the series will be payable and where the debt securities of the series may be surrendered for registration of transfer and exchange and where notices and demands to or upon us in respect of the debt securities of the series may be served, and the method of such payment, if by wire transfer, mail or other means;
- if applicable, the period or periods within which, and the terms and conditions upon which, we may, at our option, redeem debt securities of the series;
- the terms and conditions, if applicable, upon which the holders of debt securities may require us to repurchase or redeem debt securities of the series at the option of the holders of debt securities of the series;
- the provisions, terms and conditions, if any, with respect to any sinking fund or analogous provision;
- the authorized denominations in which the debt securities of the series will be issued, if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiples of \$1,000 in excess thereof;
- whether the debt securities of the series are to be issuable, in whole or in part, in bearer form (“bearer debt securities”);
- whether any fully regulated debt securities of the series will be issued in temporary or permanent global form (“global debt securities”) and, if so, the identity of the depository for the global debt securities if other than The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”);
- any depositories, interest rate calculation agents, exchange rate calculation agents or other agents;
- the trustee for the debt securities;
- the portion of the principal amount of the debt securities of the series which will be payable upon acceleration of maturity, if other than the full principal amount;
- any addition to, or modification or deletion of, any covenant described in this prospectus or in the Indenture;
- any events of default, if not otherwise described below under “—Events of Default” and any change to the right of the holders to declare the principal of any debt securities due and payable;
- if other than U.S. dollars, the currency, currencies or currency units of denomination of the debt securities of the series, which may be any foreign currency, and if such currency denomination is a composite currency, the agency or organization, if any, responsible for overseeing such composite currency;
- if other than U.S. dollars, the currency, currencies or currency units in which the purchase price for the debt securities of the series will be payable, in which payments of principal and, if applicable, premium or interest on the debt securities of the series will be payable, and, if necessary, the manner in which the exchange rate with respect to such payments will be determined;
- any listing of the debt securities on any securities exchange;
- any additions or deletions to the defeasance or the satisfaction and discharge provisions set forth herein;
- if and under what circumstances we will pay additional amounts (“Additional Amounts”) on the debt securities of the series in respect of specified taxes, assessments or other governmental charges and, if so, whether we will have the option to redeem the debt securities of the series rather than pay the Additional Amounts;

- the priority and kind of any lien securing the debt securities and a brief identification of the principal properties subject to such lien;
- additions or deletions to or changes in the provisions relating to modification of the Indenture set forth herein; and
- any other terms of the debt securities of the series (whether or not such other terms are consistent or inconsistent with any other terms of the Indenture).

As used in this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement relating to the offering of debt securities of any series, references to the principal of and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on the debt securities of the series include the payment of Additional Amounts, if any, required by the debt securities of the series to be paid in that context.

Debt securities may be issued as original issue discount securities to be sold at a substantial discount below their principal amount. In the event of an acceleration of the maturity of any original issue discount security, the amount payable to the holder upon acceleration will be determined in the manner described in the accompanying prospectus supplement. Certain U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to original issue discount securities will be described in the accompanying prospectus supplement.

If the purchase price of any debt securities is payable in a foreign currency or if the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest, if any, on any debt securities is payable in a foreign currency, the specific terms of those debt securities and the applicable foreign currency will be specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement relating to those debt securities.

The terms of the debt securities of any series may differ from the terms of the debt securities of any other series, and the terms of particular debt securities within any series may differ from each other. Unless otherwise expressly provided in the accompanying prospectus supplement relating to any series of debt securities, we may, without the consent of the holders of the debt securities of any series, reopen an existing series of debt securities and issue additional debt securities of that series.

Unless otherwise described in an accompanying prospectus supplement relating to any series of debt securities and except to the limited extent set forth below under “—Merger, Consolidation and Transfer of Assets,” there will be no limitation upon our ability to incur indebtedness or other liabilities or that would afford holders of debt securities protection in the event of a business combination, takeover, recapitalization or highly leveraged or similar transaction involving us. Accordingly, we may in the future enter into transactions that could increase the amount of our consolidated indebtedness and other liabilities or otherwise adversely affect our capital structure or credit rating without the consent of the holders of the debt securities of any series.

#### **Registration, Transfer and Payment**

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, each series of debt securities will be issued in registered form only, without coupons.

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, debt securities will be issued in denominations of \$1,000 or any integral multiples of \$1,000 in excess thereof.

Unless otherwise indicated in the accompanying prospectus supplement, the debt securities will be payable and may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange and, if applicable, for conversion into or exchange for other securities or property, at an office or agency maintained by us in the United States. However, we may, at our option, make payments of interest on any registered debt security by check mailed to the address of the person entitled to receive that payment or by wire transfer to an account maintained by the payee with a bank located in the United States. Unless otherwise indicated in the accompanying prospectus supplement, no service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange, redemption or repayment of debt securities, or for any conversion or exchange of debt securities for other securities or property, but we may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with that transaction.

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will not be required to:

- issue, register the transfer of or exchange debt securities of any series during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any mailing of a notice of a redemption for the debt securities of that series selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing; or
- register the transfer of or exchange any debt security, or portion of any debt security, selected for redemption, except the unredeemed portion of any registered debt security being redeemed in part.

### **Book-entry Debt Securities**

The debt securities of a series may be issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more global debt securities. Global debt securities will be deposited with, or on behalf of, a depository which, unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to the series, will be DTC. Global debt securities may be issued in either registered or bearer form and in either temporary or permanent form. Unless and until it is exchanged in whole or in part for individual certificates evidencing debt securities, a global debt security may not be transferred except as a whole by the depository to its nominee or by the nominee to the depository, or by the depository or its nominee to a successor depository or to a nominee of the successor depository.

We anticipate that global debt securities will be deposited with, or on behalf of, DTC and that global debt securities will be registered in the name of DTC's nominee, Cede & Co. All interests in global debt securities deposited with, or on behalf of, DTC will be subject to the operations and procedures of DTC and, in the case of any interests in global debt securities held through Euroclear Bank S.A./N.V. ("Euroclear") or Clearstream Banking, société anonyme ("Clearstream, Luxembourg"), the operations and procedures of Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be. We also anticipate that the following provisions will apply to the depository arrangements with respect to global debt securities. Additional or differing terms of the depository arrangements may be described in the accompanying prospectus supplement.

DTC has advised us that it is:

- a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law;
- a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law;
- a member of the Federal Reserve System;
- a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code; and
- a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Exchange Act.

DTC holds securities that its participants deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the settlement among its participants of securities transactions, including transfers and pledges, in deposited securities through electronic computerized book-entry changes in participants' accounts, which eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct participants include securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and other organizations. Access to the DTC system is also available to others, sometimes referred to in this prospectus as indirect participants, that clear transactions through or maintain a custodial relationship with a direct participant either directly or indirectly. Indirect participants include securities brokers and dealers, banks and trust companies. The rules applicable to DTC and its participants are on file with the SEC.

Purchases of debt securities within the DTC system must be made by or through direct participants, which will receive a credit for the debt securities on DTC's records. The ownership interest of the actual purchaser or beneficial owner of a debt security is, in turn, recorded on the direct and indirect participants' records. Beneficial owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchases, but beneficial owners are expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transactions, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the direct or indirect participants through which they purchased the debt securities. Transfers of ownership interests in debt securities are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of participants acting on behalf of beneficial owners.

Beneficial owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in the debt securities, except under the limited circumstances described below.



To facilitate subsequent transfers, all debt securities deposited by participants with DTC will be registered in the name of DTC's nominee, Cede & Co. The deposit of debt securities with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. will not change the beneficial ownership of the debt securities. DTC has no knowledge of the actual beneficial owners of the debt securities. DTC's records reflect only the identity of the direct participants to whose accounts the debt securities are credited. Those participants may or may not be the beneficial owners. The participants are responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to direct participants, by direct participants to indirect participants and by direct and indirect participants to beneficial owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any legal requirements in effect from time to time. Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC or its nominee. If less than all of the debt securities of a series are being redeemed, DTC will reduce the amount of the interest of each direct participant in the debt securities under its procedures.

In any case in which a vote may be required with respect to the debt securities of any series, neither DTC nor Cede & Co. will give consents for or vote the global debt securities. Under its usual procedures, DTC will mail an omnibus proxy to us after the record date. The omnibus proxy assigns the consenting or voting rights of Cede & Co. to those direct participants to whose accounts the debt securities are credited on the record date identified in a listing attached to the omnibus proxy. Principal and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on the global debt securities will be paid to Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit direct participants' accounts on the relevant payment date unless DTC has reason to believe that it will not receive payments on the payment date. Payments by direct and indirect participants to beneficial owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the account of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name." Those payments will be the responsibility of DTC's direct and indirect participants and not of DTC, us, the Trustee or any underwriters or agents involved in the offering or sale of any debt securities. Payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, to DTC is our responsibility, disbursement of payments to direct participants is the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of payments to the beneficial owners is the responsibility of direct and indirect participants.

Except under the limited circumstances described below, beneficial owners of interests in a global debt security will not be entitled to have debt securities registered in their names and will not receive physical delivery of debt securities. Accordingly, each beneficial owner must rely on the procedures of DTC to exercise any rights under the debt securities and the Indenture.

The laws of some jurisdictions may require that some purchasers of securities take physical delivery of securities in definitive form. These laws may impair the ability to transfer or pledge beneficial interests in global debt securities.

DTC is under no obligation to provide its services as depository for the debt securities of any series and may discontinue providing its services at any time. None of us, the Trustee or any underwriters or agents involved in the offering or sale of any debt securities will have any responsibility for the performance by DTC or its participants or indirect participants under the rules and procedures governing DTC. As noted above, beneficial owners of interests in global debt securities generally will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in the debt securities. However, if:

- DTC notifies us that it is unwilling or unable to continue as a depository for the global debt securities of any series, or if at any time DTC ceases to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act (if so required by applicable law or regulation) and a successor depository for the debt securities of such series is not appointed within 90 days of such event, as the case may be, or
- an event of default under the Indenture has occurred and is continuing with respect to the debt securities of any series,

We will prepare and deliver certificates for the debt securities of that series in exchange for beneficial interests in the global debt securities of that series. Any beneficial interest in a global debt security that is exchangeable under the circumstances described in the preceding sentence will be exchangeable for debt securities in definitive certificated form registered in the names and in the authorized denominations that the depository shall direct. It is expected that these directions will be based upon directions received by the depository from its participants with respect to ownership of beneficial interests in the global debt securities.

Clearstream, Luxembourg and Euroclear hold interests on behalf of their participating organizations through customers' securities accounts in Clearstream, Luxembourg's and Euroclear's names on the books of their respective depositories, which hold those interests in customers' securities accounts in the depositories' names on the books of DTC. At the present time, Citibank, N.A. acts as U.S. depository for Clearstream, Luxembourg and JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. acts as U.S. depository for Euroclear (the "U.S. Depositories").

Clearstream, Luxembourg holds securities for its participating organizations (“Clearstream Participants”) and facilitates the clearance and settlement of securities transactions between Clearstream Participants through electronic book-entry changes in accounts of Clearstream Participants, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of certificates. Clearstream, Luxembourg provides to Clearstream Participants, among other things, services for safekeeping, administration, clearance and settlement of internationally traded securities and securities lending and borrowing.

Clearstream, Luxembourg is registered as a bank in Luxembourg, and as such is subject to regulation by the Commission de Surveillance du Secteur Financier and the Banque Centrale du Luxembourg, which supervise and oversee the activities of Luxembourg banks. Clearstream Participants are financial institutions including underwriters, securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies and clearing corporations, and may include any underwriters or agents involved in the offering or sale of any debt securities or their respective affiliates. Indirect access to Clearstream, Luxembourg is available to other institutions that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Clearstream Participant. Clearstream, Luxembourg has established an electronic bridge with Euroclear as the operator of the Euroclear System (the “Euroclear Operator”) in Brussels to facilitate settlement of trades between Clearstream, Luxembourg and the Euroclear Operator.

Distributions with respect to global debt securities held beneficially through Clearstream, Luxembourg will be credited to cash accounts of Clearstream Participants in accordance with its rules and procedures, to the extent received by the U.S. Depository for Clearstream, Luxembourg. Euroclear holds securities and book-entry interests in securities for participating organizations (“Euroclear Participants”) and facilitates the clearance and settlement of securities transactions between Euroclear Participants, and between Euroclear Participants and participants of certain other securities intermediaries through electronic book-entry changes in accounts of such participants or other securities intermediaries. Euroclear provides Euroclear Participants, among other things, with safekeeping, administration, clearance and settlement, securities lending and borrowing, and related services. Euroclear Participants are investment banks, securities brokers and dealers, banks, central banks, supranationals, custodians, investment managers, corporations, trust companies and certain other organizations, and may include any underwriters or agents involved in the offering or sale of any debt securities or their respective affiliates. Non-participants in Euroclear may hold and transfer beneficial interests in a global debt security through accounts with a participant in the Euroclear System or any other securities intermediary that holds a book-entry interest in a global debt security through one or more securities intermediaries standing between such other securities intermediary and Euroclear.

Securities clearance accounts and cash accounts with the Euroclear Operator are governed by the Terms and Conditions Governing Use of Euroclear and the related Operating Procedures of the Euroclear System, and applicable Belgian law (collectively, the “Terms and Conditions”). The Terms and Conditions govern transfers of securities and cash within Euroclear, withdrawals of securities and cash from Euroclear and receipts of payments with respect to securities in Euroclear. All securities in Euroclear are held on a fungible basis without attribution of specific certificates to specific securities clearance accounts. The Euroclear Operator acts under the Terms and Conditions only on behalf of Euroclear Participants, and has no record of or relationship with persons holding through Euroclear Participants.

Distributions on interests in global debt securities held beneficially through Euroclear will be credited to the cash accounts of Euroclear Participants in accordance with the Terms and Conditions, to the extent received by the U.S. Depository for Euroclear.

Transfers between Euroclear Participants and Clearstream Participants will be effected in the ordinary way in accordance with their respective rules and operating procedures.

Cross-market transfers between direct participants in DTC, on the one hand, and Euroclear Participants or Clearstream Participants, on the other hand, will be effected through DTC in accordance with DTC’s rules on behalf of Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be, by its U.S. Depository; however, such cross-market transactions will require delivery of instructions to Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be, by the counterparty in such system in accordance with the applicable rules and procedures and within the established deadlines (European time) of such system. Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be, will, if the transaction meets its settlement requirements, deliver instructions to its U.S. Depository to take action to effect final settlement on its behalf by delivering or receiving interests in global debt securities in DTC, and making or receiving payment in accordance with normal procedures for same-day fund settlement applicable to DTC. Euroclear Participants and Clearstream Participants may not deliver instructions directly to their respective U.S. Depositories.

Due to time zone differences, the securities accounts of a Euroclear Participant or Clearstream Participant purchasing an interest in a global debt security from a direct participant in DTC will be credited, and any such crediting will be reported to the relevant Euroclear Participant or Clearstream Participant, during the securities settlement processing day (which must be a business day for Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg) immediately following the settlement date of DTC. Cash received in Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg as a result of sales of interests in a global debt security by or through a Euroclear Participant or Clearstream Participant to a direct participant in DTC will be received with value on the settlement date of DTC but will be available in the relevant Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg cash account only as of the business day for Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg following DTC's settlement date.

Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg are under no obligation to perform or to continue to perform the foregoing procedures and such procedures may be discontinued at any time without notice. None of us, the Trustee or any underwriters or agents involved in the offering or sale of any debt securities will have any responsibility for the performance by Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg or their respective participants of their respective obligations under the rules and procedures governing their operations.

The information in this section concerning DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg and their book-entry systems has been obtained from sources that we believe to be reliable, but we take no responsibility for the accuracy of that information.

### **Redemption and Repurchase**

The debt securities of any series may be redeemable at our option, or may be subject to mandatory redemption by us, as required by a sinking fund or otherwise. In addition, the debt securities of any series may be subject to repurchase or repayment by us, at the option of the holders. The accompanying prospectus supplement will describe the terms, the times and the prices regarding any optional or mandatory redemption by us or any repurchase or repayment at the option of the holders of any series of debt securities.

### **Conversion and Exchange**

The terms, if any, on which debt securities of any series are convertible into or exchangeable for our common shares or any other securities or property will be set forth in the accompanying prospectus supplement. Such terms may include provisions for conversion or exchange, which may be mandatory, at the option of the holders or at our option. Unless otherwise expressly stated in the accompanying prospectus supplement, references in this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement to the conversion or exchange of debt securities of any series for our common stock or other securities or property shall be deemed not to refer to or include any exchange of any debt securities of a series for other debt securities of the same series.

### **Merger, Consolidation and Transfer of Assets**

Unless otherwise specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement, it can be expected that the Indenture will provide that we will not, directly or indirectly, in any transaction or series of related transactions, consolidate or merge with another person (whether or not we are the surviving corporation), or sell, assign, transfer, lease or convey or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of the property and assets of us and our subsidiaries taken as a whole, to another person unless:

- we shall be the continuing entity or the resulting, surviving or transferee person shall (i) be a corporation, partnership, limited liability company, trust or other entity organized and validly existing under the laws of any domestic or foreign jurisdiction and (ii) shall expressly assume by supplemental indenture reasonably satisfactory in form to the Trustee all of our obligations under the debt securities and the Indenture (including, without limitation, the obligation to convert or exchange any debt securities that are convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or property in accordance with the provisions of such debt securities and the Indenture);
- immediately after giving effect to a transaction described above, no event of default under the Indenture, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time or both would become an event of default under the Indenture, shall exist; and
- the Trustee shall have received the officers' certificate and opinion of counsel called for by the Indenture.

In the case of any such merger, consolidation, sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition in which we are not the continuing entity and upon execution and delivery by the successor person of the supplemental indenture described above, such successor person shall succeed to, and be substituted for us and may exercise every right and power of us under the Indenture with the same effect as if such successor person had been named as us therein, and we shall be automatically released and discharged from all obligations and covenants under the Indenture and the debt securities issued under that indenture.

## Events of Default

Unless otherwise specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement, any of the following events may be events of default with respect to the debt securities of any series:

- default in payment of any interest on, or any Additional Amounts payable in respect of, any of the debt securities of a series when due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days;
- default in payment of any principal of, or premium, if any, on, or any Additional Amounts, if any, payable in respect of any principal of or premium, if any, on, any of the debt securities of a series when due (whether at maturity, upon redemption, upon repayment or repurchase at the option of the holder or otherwise and whether payable in cash or common shares or other securities or property);
- default in the performance or breach of any covenant (other than those events defaults referenced in the first and second bullet points above) for the benefit of the holders of the debt securities of a series for 90 days after receipt of written notice of such default given by the Trustee or holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the debt securities of such series;
- specified events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization with respect to us; or
- any other event of default established for the debt securities of that series.

No event of default with respect to any particular series of debt securities necessarily constitutes an event of default with respect to any other series of debt securities.

Unless otherwise specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement, the Indenture can be expected to provide that the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series may waive our compliance with the provisions described above under “— Merger, Consolidation and Transfer of Assets” and certain other provisions of the Indenture and, if specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, any additional covenants applicable to the debt securities of such series. The Indenture may also provide that holders of not less than a majority in aggregate of principal amount of the then outstanding debt securities of any series may waive an existing default or event of default with respect to the debt securities of such series, except a default in payment of principal of, or premium, if any, or interest, if any, or Additional Amounts, if any, or sinking fund payments, if any, on debt securities of that series or, in the case of any debt securities which are convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or property, a default in any such conversion or exchange, or a default in respect of a covenant or provision which cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the holder of each outstanding debt security of the affected series. As used in this paragraph, the term “default” means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an event of default with respect to the debt securities of any series.

Unless otherwise specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement, the Indenture can also be expected to provide that if an event of default (other than an event of default specified in the fourth and fifth bullet points of the third preceding paragraph) occurs and is continuing with respect to any series of debt securities, either the Trustee or the holders of more than 25% in principal amount of the debt securities of that series then outstanding may declare the principal of, or if debt securities of that series are original issue discount securities, such lesser amount as may be specified in the terms of that series of debt securities, and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all the debt securities of that series to be due and payable immediately. The Indenture may also provide that if an event of default specified in the fourth and fifth bullet points of the third preceding paragraph occurs with respect to any series of debt securities, then the principal of, or if debt securities of that series are original issue discount securities, such lesser amount as may be specified in the terms of that series of debt securities, and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all the debt securities of that series will automatically become and be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other action on the part of the Trustee or any holder of the debt securities of that series. However, upon specified conditions, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of a series then outstanding may rescind and annul an acceleration of the debt securities of that series and its consequences.

Subject to the provisions of the TIA requiring the Trustee, during the continuance of an event of default under the Indenture, to act with the requisite standard of care, the Trustee is under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under the Indenture at the request or direction of any of the holders of debt securities of any series unless those holders have offered the Trustee indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, fees and expenses and liabilities which might be incurred in compliance with such request or direction. Subject to the foregoing, holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series issued under the Indenture have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee under the Indenture with respect to that series. The Indenture will likely require our annual filing with the Trustee of a certificate which states whether or not we are in default under the terms of the Indenture.

Unless otherwise specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement, no holder of any debt securities of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to the Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy under the Indenture, unless:

- the holder gives written notice to the Trustee of a continuing event of default with respect to the debt securities of such series;
- the holders of more than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of such series make a written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such event of default;
- the holder or holders offer to the Trustee indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, fees and expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- the Trustee for 90 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity fails to institute any such proceeding; and
- no direction inconsistent with such written request is given to the Trustee during such 90 day period by the holders of a majority of the aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding debt securities of such series.

Notwithstanding any other provision of the Indenture, it is anticipated that the holder of a debt security will have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on that debt security on the respective due dates for those payments and, in the case of any debt security which is convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or property, to convert or exchange, as the case may be, that debt security in accordance with its terms, and to institute suit for the enforcement of those payments and any right to effect such conversion or exchange, and this right shall not be impaired without the consent of the holder.

#### **Modification, Waivers and Meetings**

From time to time, we and the Trustee, with the consent of the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each series issued under the Indenture and affected by a modification or amendment, may modify, amend, supplement or waive compliance with any of the provisions of the Indenture or of the debt securities of the applicable series or the rights of the holders of the debt securities of that series under the Indenture. However, unless otherwise specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement, no such modification, amendment, supplement or waiver may, among other things:

- change the amount of debt securities of any series issued under the Indenture whose holders must consent to any amendment, supplement or waiver;
- reduce the rate of or extend the time for payment of interest (including default interest) on any debt securities issued under the Indenture;
- reduce the principal or change the stated maturity of the principal of, or postpone the date fixed for, the payment of any sinking fund or analogous obligations with respect to any debt securities issued under the Indenture;
- reduce the amount of principal of any original issue discount securities that would be due and payable upon an acceleration of the maturity thereof;

- waive any default or event of default in the payment of the principal of or interest, if any, on any debt securities (except a rescission of acceleration of the debt securities by the holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding series of such debt securities and a waiver of the payment default that resulted from such acceleration);
- change any place where or the currency in which debt securities are payable;
- make any changes to the provisions of the Indenture relating to waivers of past defaults, rights of holders of debt securities to receive payment or limitations on amendments to the Indenture without the consent of all holders; or
- waive any redemption payment with respect to a debt security of such series;

without in each case obtaining the consent of the holder of each outstanding debt security issued under the Indenture affected by the modification or amendment.

From time to time, we and the Trustee, without the consent of the holders of any debt securities issued under the Indenture, may modify, amend, supplement or waive compliance with any provisions of the Indenture, among other things:

- to cure any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency;
- to provide for uncertificated debt securities in addition to or in place of certificated debt securities;
- to evidence the succession of another person to us under the Indenture and the assumption by that successor of our covenants, contained in the Indenture and in the debt securities;
- to add any additional events of default with respect to all or any series of debt securities;
- to secure the debt securities of any series pursuant to the requirements of any covenant on liens in respect of such series or otherwise;
- to change or eliminate any provision of the Indenture, or to add any new provisions to the Indenture, provided that any such change, elimination or addition (A) shall (i) not apply to any debt securities outstanding on the date of such supplemental indenture or (ii) modify the rights of the holder of any debt security with respect to such provision in effect prior to the date of such supplemental indenture or (B) shall become effective only when no debt security of such series remains outstanding;
- to make any change that would provide additional rights or benefits to holders of the debt securities of such series or that does not adversely affect the holders' rights under the Indenture in any material respect;
- to comply with requirements of the SEC in order to effect or maintain the qualification of the Indenture under the TIA;
- to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of debt securities of any series as permitted by the Indenture;
- to evidence and provide for the acceptance of the appointment of a successor trustee in respect of the debt securities of one or more series or to add to or change any of the provisions of the Indenture as are necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the Indenture by more than one trustee;
- to add additional guarantors or obligors under the Indenture; or
- to conform any provision of the Indenture or any debt securities or security documents to the description thereof reflected in any prospectus (including this prospectus), accompanying prospectus supplement, offering memorandum or similar offering document used in connection with the initial offering or sale of such debt securities to the extent that such description was intended to be a verbatim recitation of a provision of the Indenture, the debt securities or security documents.

## Discharge, Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance

Unless otherwise provided in the applicable prospectus supplement, upon our direction, the Indenture shall cease to be of further effect with respect to any series of debt securities issued under the Indenture specified by us, subject to the survival of specified provisions of the Indenture (including the obligation to pay Additional Amounts, if any, and the obligation, if applicable, to exchange or convert debt securities of that series into other securities or property in accordance with their terms) when

- either:
  - all of the debt securities of such series that have been authenticated, except lost, stolen or destroyed debt securities that have been replaced or paid and debt securities for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust and thereafter repaid to us, have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or
  - all of the debt securities of such series that have not been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation have become due and payable by reason of the mailing of a notice of redemption or otherwise or will become due and payable within one year or have been called for redemption and we have irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust solely for the benefit of the holders of such debt securities, cash in U.S. dollars, non-callable U.S. government securities or a combination thereof, in such amounts as will be sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such debt securities not delivered to the Trustee for cancellation for principal, premium, if any, and accrued interest to the date of maturity or redemption;
- no default or event of default has occurred and is continuing on the date of such deposit (other than a default or event of default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit or the grant of any lien securing such borrowing or any similar and simultaneous deposit relating to other indebtedness and, in each case, the granting of liens in connection therewith) and the deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any material instrument to which we are a party or by which we are bound (other than a breach, violation or default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit or the grant of any lien securing such borrowing or any similar and simultaneous deposit relating to other indebtedness and, in each case, the granting of liens in connection therewith);
- we have paid or caused to be paid all sums payable by us under the Indenture; and
- we have delivered irrevocable instructions to the Trustee for such debt securities to apply the deposited money toward the payment of such debt securities at maturity or on the redemption date, as the case may be.

Unless otherwise provided in the accompanying prospectus supplement, we may elect with respect to any series of debt securities and at any time, to have our obligations discharged with respect to the outstanding debt securities of such series (“Legal Defeasance”). Legal Defeasance means that we shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by the debt securities of such series, and the Indenture shall cease to be of further effect as to all outstanding debt securities of such series, except as to:

- rights of holders of outstanding debt securities of such series to receive payments in respect of the principal of and interest, if any, on the debt securities of such series when such payments are due solely out of the trust funds referred to below;
- our obligations with respect to the debt securities of such series concerning issuing temporary debt securities of such series, registration of debt securities of such series, mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen debt securities of such series, and the maintenance of an office or agency for payment and money for security payments held in trust;
- the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee for such debt securities of such series under the Indenture, and the obligations of us in connection therewith; and
- the Legal Defeasance provisions of the Indenture.

Unless otherwise specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement, in addition, we may, at our option and at any time, elect to have our obligations released with respect to substantially all of the covenants under the Indenture, except as described otherwise in the Indenture (“Covenant Defeasance”), and thereafter any omission to comply with such obligations shall not constitute a default or event of default with respect to the debt securities of such series. In the event Covenant Defeasance occurs, certain events of default will no longer constitute an event of default with respect to the debt securities of such series. Covenant Defeasance will not be effective until such bankruptcy events no longer apply. We may exercise our Legal Defeasance option regardless of whether we have previously exercised Covenant Defeasance.

In order to exercise either Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance:

- we must irrevocably deposit with the Trustee, as trust funds, in trust solely for the benefit of the holders, cash in U.S. dollars, non-callable U.S. government securities or a combination thereof, in such amounts as will be sufficient in the opinion of a nationally recognized investment bank, appraisal firm or firm of independent public accountants, to pay the principal of and interest on the debt securities of such series on the stated date for payment or on the redemption date of the principal or installment of principal of or interest on the debt securities of such series;
- in the case of Legal Defeasance, we shall have delivered to the Trustee an opinion of counsel in the United States confirming that:

- we have received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling; or
- since the date of the issuance of the debt securities of such series, there has been a change in the applicable U.S. federal income tax law;

in either case to the effect that, and based thereon this opinion of counsel shall confirm that, subject to customary assumptions and exclusions, the holders and beneficial owners of debt securities of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of such Legal Defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Legal Defeasance had not occurred;

- in the case of Covenant Defeasance, we shall have delivered to the Trustee an opinion of counsel in the United States reasonably acceptable to the Trustee confirming that, subject to customary assumptions and exclusions, the holders and beneficial owners of the debt securities of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of such Covenant Defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Covenant Defeasance had not occurred;
- no default or event of default shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit (other than a default or event of default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit or the grant of any lien securing such borrowing or any similar and simultaneous deposit relating to other indebtedness and, in each case, the granting of liens in connection therewith);
- such Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under any material agreement or instrument (other than the Indenture) to which we or any of our subsidiaries is a party or by which we or any of our subsidiaries is bound (other than that resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit or the grant of any lien securing such borrowing or any similar and simultaneous deposit relating to other indebtedness and, in each case, the granting of liens in connection therewith);
- we shall have delivered to the Trustee an officers’ certificate stating that the deposit was not made by it with the intent of preferring the holders of debt securities of such series over any other of our creditors or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding any of our creditors or others; and
- we shall have delivered to the Trustee an officers’ certificate and an opinion of counsel (which opinion of counsel may be subject to customary assumptions and exclusions), each stating that the conditions provided for in, in the case of the officers’ certificate, clauses (a) through (f) and, in the case of the opinion of counsel, clauses (b) and/or (c) and (e) of this paragraph have been complied with.

If the funds deposited with the Trustee to effect Covenant Defeasance are insufficient to pay the principal of and interest on the debt securities of such series when due, then our obligations and the obligations of our subsidiaries, if applicable, under the Indenture will be revived and no such defeasance will be deemed to have occurred.



## **Governing Law**

Unless otherwise specified in the accompanying prospectus supplement, the Indenture and the debt securities will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

## **Regarding the Trustee**

We will identify the trustee with respect to any series of debt securities in the prospectus supplement relating to the applicable debt securities. The TIA limits the rights of a trustee, if the trustee becomes a creditor of ours to obtain payment of claims or to realize on property received by it in respect of those claims, as security or otherwise. Any trustee is permitted to engage in other transactions with us and our subsidiaries from time to time. However, if a trustee acquires any conflicting interest it must eliminate the conflict upon the occurrence of an event of default under the Indenture or resign as trustee.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding debt securities of any series may direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for exercising any remedy available to the Trustee.

If an event of default occurs and is continuing, the Trustee will be required to use the degree of care and skill of a prudent man in the conduct of his own affairs. The Trustee will become obligated to exercise any of its powers under the Indenture at the request of any of the holders of debt securities only after those holders have offered the Trustee indemnity satisfactory to it.

## **DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS**

The following summarizes the general terms of stock and debt warrants that we may offer. The particular terms of any stock and debt warrants will be described in an accompanying prospectus supplement. The description below and in any accompanying prospectus supplement is not complete. You should read the form of warrant agreement and any warrant certificate that we will file with the SEC.

### **Warrants to Purchase Capital Stock**

If we offer stock warrants, the prospectus supplement will describe the terms of the stock warrants, including:

- The offering price, if any;
- If applicable, the designation and terms of any preferred stock purchasable upon exercise of preferred stock warrants;
- The number of shares of common stock or preferred stock purchasable upon exercise of one stock warrant and the initial price at which the shares may be purchased upon exercise;
- The dates on which the right to exercise the stock warrants begins and expires;
- U.S. federal income tax consequences;
- Call provisions, if any;
- The currencies in which the offering price and exercise price are payable; and
- If applicable, the antidilution provisions of the stock warrants.

The shares of common stock or preferred stock we issue upon exercise of the stock warrants will, when issued in accordance with the stock warrant agreement, be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

## **Exercise of Warrants to Purchase Capital Stock**

You may exercise stock warrants by surrendering to the stock warrant agent the stock warrant certificate, which indicates your election to exercise all or a portion of the stock warrants evidenced by the certificate. Surrendered stock warrant certificates must be accompanied by payment of the exercise price in the form of cash or check. The stock warrant agent will deliver certificates evidencing duly exercised stock warrants to the transfer agent. Upon receipt of the certificates, the transfer agent will deliver a certificate representing the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock purchased. If you exercise fewer than all the stock warrants evidenced by any certificate, the stock warrant agent will deliver a new stock warrant certificate representing the unexercised stock warrants.

## **No Rights as Stockholders**

Holders of stock warrants are not entitled to vote, to consent, to receive dividends or to receive notice as stockholders with respect to any meeting of stockholders or to exercise any rights whatsoever as our stockholders.

## **Warrants to Purchase Debt Securities**

If we offer debt warrants, the accompanying prospectus supplement will describe the terms of the warrants, including:

- The offering price, if any;
- The designation, aggregate principal amount and terms of the debt securities purchasable upon exercise of the warrants and the terms of the indenture under which the debt securities will be issued;
- If applicable, the designation and terms of the debt securities with which the debt warrants are issued and the number of debt warrants issued with each debt security;
- If applicable, the date on and after which the debt warrants and the related securities will be separately transferable;
- The principal amount of debt securities purchasable upon exercise of one debt warrant, and the price at which the principal amount of debt securities may be purchased upon exercise;
- The dates on which the right to exercise the debt warrants begins and expires;
- U.S. federal income tax consequences;
- Whether the warrants represented by the debt warrant certificates will be issued in registered or bearer form;
- The currencies in which the offering price and exercise price are payable; and
- If applicable, any antidilution provisions.

You may exchange debt warrant certificates for new debt warrant certificates of different denominations and may present debt warrant certificates for registration of transfer at the corporate trust office of the debt warrant agent, which will be listed in an accompanying prospectus supplement.

## **Exercise of Warrants to Purchase Debt Securities**

You may exercise debt warrants by surrendering the debt warrant certificate at the corporate trust office of the debt warrant agent, with payment in full of the exercise price. Upon the exercise of debt warrants, the debt warrant agent will, as soon as practicable, deliver the debt securities in authorized denominations in accordance with your instructions and at your sole cost and risk. If less than all the debt warrants evidenced by the debt warrant certificate are exercised, the agent will issue a new debt warrant certificate for the remaining amount of debt warrants.

## No Rights as Holders of Debt Securities

Warrant holders do not have any of the rights of holders of debt securities, except to the extent that the consent of warrant holders may be required for certain modifications of the terms of an indenture or form of the debt security, as the case may be, and the series of debt securities issuable upon exercise of the debt warrants. In addition, warrant holders are not entitled to payments of principal of and interest, if any, on the debt securities.

### DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS

We may issue or distribute rights to our stockholders for the purchase of shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities. We may issue rights independently or together with other securities, and the rights may be attached to or separate from any offered or distributed securities and may or may not be transferrable by the stockholder receiving the rights. In connection with any offering of rights, we may enter into a standby underwriting, backstop or other arrangement with one or more underwriters or other persons pursuant to which the underwriters or other persons may agree to purchase any securities remaining unsubscribed for after such rights offering. Each series of rights will be issued under a separate rights agreement to be entered into between us and a bank or trust company, as rights agent, all as set forth in an accompanying prospectus supplement relating to the particular issue of rights. The rights agent will act solely as an agent of the Company in connection with the certificates relating to the rights of such series and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust for or with any holders of rights certificates or beneficial owners of rights.

The following summary of material provisions of the rights are subject to, and qualified in their entirety by reference to, all the provisions of the certificates representing rights applicable to a particular series of rights. The terms of any rights offered or distributed under an accompanying prospectus supplement may differ from the terms described below. We urge you to read the accompanying prospectus supplement as well as the complete certificates representing the rights that contain the terms of the rights. The particular terms of any issue of rights will be described in an accompanying prospectus supplement relating to the issue, and may include:

- in the case of a distribution of rights to our stockholders, the date for determining the stockholders entitled to the rights distribution;
- in the case of a distribution of rights to our stockholders, the number of rights issued or to be issued to each stockholder;
- the aggregate number of shares of common stock, preferred stock or debt securities purchasable upon exercise of such rights and the exercise price;
- the aggregate number of rights being issued;
- the extent to which the rights are transferrable;
- the date on which the holder's ability to exercise such rights shall commence and the date on which such right shall expire;
- the extent to which the rights may include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities;
- a discussion of material federal income tax considerations;
- any other material terms of such rights, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the distribution, exchange and exercise of such rights; and
- if applicable, the material terms of any standby underwriting, backstop or purchase arrangement which may be entered into by the Company in connection with the offering, issuance or distribution of rights.

Each right will entitle the holder of rights to purchase for cash the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock or the principal amount of debt securities at the exercise price provided in the accompanying prospectus supplement. Rights may be exercised at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date for the rights provided in the accompanying prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, all unexercised rights will be void and of no further force and effect.

Holders may exercise rights as described in the accompanying prospectus supplement. Upon receipt of payment and the rights certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the rights agent or any other office indicated in an accompanying prospectus supplement, we will, as soon as practicable, forward the shares of common stock or preferred stock or principal amount of debt securities purchased upon exercise of the rights. If less than all of the rights issued in any rights offering are exercised, we may offer any unsubscribed shares of common stock or preferred stock or principal amount of debt securities directly to persons, which may be to or through agents, underwriters or dealers or through a combination of such methods, including pursuant to standby underwriting arrangements, as described in the accompanying prospectus supplement.

Until any rights to purchase common stock or preferred stock are exercised, the holders of the any rights will not have any rights of holders of the underlying common stock or preferred stock, including any rights to receive dividends or payments upon any liquidation, dissolution or winding up on the common stock or preferred stock, if any. Until any rights to purchase debt securities are exercised, the holder of any rights will not have any rights of holders of the debt securities that can be purchased upon exercise, including any rights to receive payments of principal, premium or interest on the underlying debt securities or to enforce covenants in the applicable indenture.

#### **DESCRIPTION OF UNITS**

As may be specified in an accompanying prospectus supplement, we may issue units consisting of one or more of our securities registered hereby. An accompanying prospectus supplement will describe:

- The terms of the units and of the securities comprising the units, including whether and under what circumstances the securities comprising the units may be traded separately;
- A description of the terms of any unit agreement governing the units; and
- A description of the provisions for the payment, settlement, transfer or exchange of the units.

#### **PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION**

We may sell the securities offered by this prospectus from time to time in one or more transactions;

- directly to purchasers;
- through agents;
- directly to our stockholders, including as a dividend or distribution or in a subscription rights offering;
- in “at the market” offerings, within the meaning of Rule 415(a)(4) under the Securities Act, to or through a market maker or into an existing trading market on an exchange or otherwise;
- to or through underwriters or dealers; or
- through a combination of these methods.

A distribution of the securities offered by this prospectus may also be effected through the issuance of derivative securities, including without limitation, warrants and subscriptions.

In addition, the manner in which we may sell some or all of the securities covered by this prospectus includes, without limitation, through:

- a block trade in which a broker-dealer will attempt to sell as agent, but may position or resell a portion of the block, as principal, in order to facilitate the transaction;
- purchases by a broker-dealer, as principal, and resale by the broker-dealer for its account; or
- ordinary brokerage transactions and transactions in which a broker solicits purchasers.

In addition, we may enter into derivative or hedging transactions with third parties, or sell securities not covered by this prospectus to third parties in privately negotiated transactions. In connection with such a transaction, the third parties may sell securities covered by and pursuant to this prospectus and an applicable prospectus supplement or other offering materials, as the case may be. If so, the third party may use securities borrowed from us or others to settle such sales and may use securities received from us to close out any related short positions. We may also loan or pledge securities covered by this prospectus and an applicable prospectus supplement to third parties, who may sell the loaned securities or, in an event of default in the case of a pledge, sell the pledged securities pursuant to this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement or other offering materials, as the case may be.

A prospectus supplement with respect to each series of securities will state the terms of the offering of the securities, including:

- the terms of the offering;
- the name or names of any underwriters or agents and the amounts of securities underwritten or purchased by each of them, if any;
- the public offering price or purchase price of the securities and the net proceeds to be received by us from the sale;
- any delayed delivery arrangements;
- any initial public offering price;
- any underwriting discounts or agency fees and other items constituting underwriters' or agents' compensation;
- any discounts or concessions allowed or reallowed or paid to dealers; and
- any securities exchange on which the securities may be listed.

The offer and sale of the securities described in this prospectus by us, the underwriters or the third parties described above may be effected from time to time in one or more transactions, including privately negotiated transactions, either:

- at a fixed price or prices, which may be changed;
- in an “at the market” offering within the meaning of Rule 415(a)(4) of the Securities Act;
- at prices related to the prevailing market prices; or
- at negotiated prices.

## **General**

Underwriters, dealers, agents and remarketing firms that participate in the distribution of the offered securities may be “underwriters” as defined in the Securities Act of 1933. Any discounts or commissions they receive from us and any profits they receive on the resale of the offered securities may be treated as underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act. Underwriters, dealers, agents and other persons may be entitled, under agreements that they may enter into with us, to indemnification by us against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, in connection with their participation in our offerings.

Under Rule 15c6-1 of the Exchange Act, trades in the secondary market generally are required to settle in two business days, unless the parties to any such trade expressly agree otherwise. The accompanying prospectus supplement may provide that the original issue date for your securities may be more than two scheduled business days after the trade date for your securities. Accordingly, in such a case, if you wish to trade securities on any date prior to the second business day before the original issue date for your securities, you will be required, by virtue of the fact that your securities initially are expected to settle in more than two scheduled business days after the trade date for your securities, to make alternative settlement arrangements to prevent a failed settlement.

## **Underwriters and Agents**

If underwriters are used in a sale, they will acquire the offered securities for their own account. The underwriters may resell the offered securities in one or more transactions, including negotiated transactions. These sales will be made at a fixed public offering price or at varying prices determined at the time of the sale. We may offer the securities to the public through an underwriting syndicate or through a single underwriter. The underwriters in any particular offering will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement or other offering materials, as the case may be.

Unless the applicable prospectus supplement states otherwise, the obligations of the underwriters to purchase the offered securities will be subject to certain conditions contained in an underwriting agreement that we will enter into with the underwriters at the time of the sale to them. The underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of the securities of the series offered if any of the securities are purchased, unless the applicable prospectus supplement says otherwise. Any initial public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed, reallocated or paid to dealers may be changed from time to time.

We may designate agents to sell the offered securities. Unless the applicable prospectus supplement states otherwise, the agents will agree to use their best efforts to solicit purchases for the period of their appointment.

One or more firms, referred to as “remarketing firms,” may also offer or sell the securities, if the prospectus supplement so indicates, in connection with a remarketing arrangement upon their purchase. Remarketing firms will act as principals for their own accounts or as agents for us. These remarketing firms will offer or sell the securities in accordance with a redemption or repayment pursuant to the terms of the securities. The prospectus supplement will identify any remarketing firm and the terms of its agreement, if any, with us and will describe the remarketing firm’s compensation. Remarketing firms may be deemed to be underwriters in connection with the securities they remarket. Remarketing firms may be entitled under agreements that may be entered into with us to indemnification by us against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, and may be customers of, engage in transactions with or perform services for us in the ordinary course of business.

Any underwriters, dealers and agents, and their associates and affiliates may engage in transactions with, or perform services, including investment banking services, for us or one or more of our respective affiliates in the ordinary course of business for which they receive compensation. We will describe in an accompanying prospectus supplement the identity of any such underwriters, dealers and agents and the nature of any such relationships. If at the time of any offering made under this prospectus a member of FINRA participating in the offering has a “conflict of interest” as defined in FINRA Rule 5121, that offering will be conducted in accordance with the relevant provisions of FINRA Rule 5121.

Underwriters and agents may from time to time purchase and sell securities in the secondary market, but are not obligated to do so, and there can be no assurance that there will be a secondary market for the securities or liquidity in the secondary market if one develops. From time to time, underwriters and agents may make a market in the securities but are not obligated to do so and may cease to do so at any time.

We may enter into derivative or other hedging transactions with financial institutions. These financial institutions may in turn engage in sales of securities to hedge their position, deliver this prospectus in connection with some or all of those sales and use the securities covered by this prospectus to close out any short position created in connection with those sales. We may also sell interest in some or all of the securities covered by this prospectus to support a derivative or hedging position or other obligations and, if we default in the performance of our obligations, the pledgees or secured parties may offer and sell the securities from time to time securities short using this prospectus and deliver securities covered by this prospectus to close out such short positions, or loan or pledge securities to financial institutions that in turn may sell the securities using this prospectus. We may pledge or grant a security pursuant to this prospectus.

### **Dealers**

We may sell the offered securities to dealers as principals. The dealer may then resell such securities to the public either at varying prices to be determined by the dealer or at a fixed offering price agreed to with us at the time of resale.

### **Direct Sales**

We may choose to sell the offered securities directly. In this case, no underwriters or agents would be involved.

## **Institutional Purchasers**

We may authorize agents, dealers or underwriters to solicit certain institutional investors to purchase offered securities on a delayed delivery basis pursuant to delayed delivery contracts providing for payment and delivery on a specified future date. The applicable prospectus supplement or other offering materials, as the case may be, will provide the details of any such arrangement, including the offering price and commissions payable on the solicitations.

We will enter into such delayed contracts only with institutional purchasers that we approve. These institutions may include commercial and savings banks, insurance companies, pension funds, investment companies and educational and charitable institutions.

## **Indemnification; Other Relationships**

We may have agreements with agents, underwriters, dealers and remarketing firms to indemnify them against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act. Agents, underwriters, dealers and remarketing firms, and their affiliates, may engage in transactions with, or perform services for, us in the ordinary course of business. This includes commercial banking and investment banking transactions.

## **Market-Making, Stabilization and Other Transactions**

There is currently a market for our common stock which is traded on the Nasdaq Global Select Market. If the offered securities are traded after their initial issuance, they may trade at a discount from their initial offering price, depending upon prevailing interest rates, the market for similar securities and other factors. While it is possible that an underwriter could inform us that it intends to make a market in the offered securities, any such underwriter would not be obligated to do so, and any such market-making could be discontinued at any time without notice. Therefore, no assurance can be given as to whether an active trading market will be maintained for the offered securities.

Any underwriter may engage in overallocation, stabilizing transactions, short covering transactions and penalty bids. Overallocation involves sales in excess of the offering size, which create a short position. Stabilizing transactions permit bids to purchase the underlying security so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum. Short covering transactions involve purchases of the securities in the open market after the distribution is completed to cover short positions. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim a selling concession from a dealer when the securities originally sold by the dealer are purchased in a stabilizing or covering transaction to cover short positions. Those activities may cause the price of the securities to be higher than it would otherwise be. If commenced, the underwriters may discontinue any of the activities at any time. These transactions may be effected on any exchange or over-the-counter market or otherwise.

Any underwriters who are qualified market makers may engage in passive market making transactions in the securities in accordance with Rule 103 of Regulation M, during the business day prior to the pricing of the offering, before the commencement of offers or sales of the securities. Passive market makers must comply with applicable volume and price limitations and must be identified as passive market makers. In general, a passive market maker must display its bid at a price not in excess of the highest independent bid for such security; if all independent bids are lowered below the passive market maker's bid, however, the passive market maker's bid must then be lowered when certain purchase limits are exceeded. Passive market making may stabilize the market price of the securities at a level above that which might otherwise prevail in the open market and, if commenced, may be discontinued at any time.

## **LEGAL MATTERS**

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, the validity of the securities offered by this prospectus will be passed upon for us by Feder Kaszovitz LLP, New York, New York. If legal matters in connection with offerings made by this prospectus are passed on by counsel for the underwriters, dealers or agents, if any, that counsel will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement.

## **EXPERTS**

The consolidated financial statements of JAKKS Pacific, Inc. as of December 31, 2021 and 2020 and for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2021 incorporated by reference in this Prospectus and in the Registration Statement have been so incorporated in reliance on the report of BDO USA, LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, incorporated herein by reference, given on the authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting.

**The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. These securities may not be sold until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED OCTOBER 20, 2022

PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT

**\$75,000,000**

**JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.**

**COMMON STOCK**

We have entered into an At Market Issuance Sales Agreement, or the “sales agreement,” with B. Riley Securities, Inc., or “B. Riley Securities” or the “Agent,” relating to our common stock offered by this prospectus. In accordance with the terms of the sales agreement, we may offer and sell our common stock, having an aggregate offering price of up to \$75,000,000 from time to time through the Agent, acting as our agent or principal.

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the symbol “JAKK.” On October 14, 2022, the closing price of our common stock as reported by the Nasdaq Global Select Market was \$18.11 per share.

Sales of our common stock, if any, under this prospectus may be made in sales deemed to be “at the market equity offerings” as defined in Rule 415 promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the “Securities Act.” The Agent will act as a sales agent on a best efforts basis using commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices, on mutually agreed terms between the Agent and us. There is no arrangement for funds to be received in any escrow, trust or similar arrangement.

The compensation to the Agent for sales of common stock sold pursuant to the sales agreement is 3.0% of the gross proceeds from the sales. In connection with the sale of the common stock on our behalf, the Agent will be deemed to be an “underwriter” within the meaning of the Securities Act and the compensation of the Agent will be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts. We have also agreed to provide indemnification and contribution to the Agent with respect to certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act

**An investment in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. See “Risk Factors” beginning on page S-4 of this prospectus for more information on these risks.**

**NEITHER THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION NOR ANY STATE SECURITIES COMMISSION HAS APPROVED OR DISAPPROVED OF THESE SECURITIES OR PASSED UPON THE ADEQUACY OR ACCURACY OF THIS PROSPECTUS. ANY REPRESENTATION TO THE CONTRARY IS A CRIMINAL OFFENSE.**

**B. Riley Securities**

**Prospectus dated October 20, 2022**

---



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<a href="#"><u>ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</u></a>	S-1
<a href="#"><u>SUMMARY</u></a>	S-2
<a href="#"><u>THE OFFERING</u></a>	S-4
<a href="#"><u>RISK FACTORS</u></a>	S-4
<a href="#"><u>SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</u></a>	S-6
<a href="#"><u>USE OF PROCEEDS</u></a>	S-6
<a href="#"><u>DILUTION</u></a>	S-7
<a href="#"><u>PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</u></a>	S-8
<a href="#"><u>LEGAL MATTERS</u></a>	S-9
<a href="#"><u>EXPERTS</u></a>	S-9
<a href="#"><u>AVAILABLE INFORMATION</u></a>	S-9
<a href="#"><u>INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE</u></a>	S-9

---

## ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

The purpose of this prospectus is to allow us to make sales from the “shelf” in “at -the-market” or “ATM” transactions. Unlike in underwritten public offerings, sales under ATM programs are not marketed, they are made at prevailing market prices, and they are generally less dilutive to stockholders than marketed offerings that generate the same net proceeds because (i) they are typically less expensive to transact than marketed offerings and (ii) they can be executed without a discount to the prevailing market price of the stock that is typical in marketed offerings. Our board of directors has concluded that, at this time, it is in our best interest to have an ATM program available and to be used at our discretion for capital raising, since it enables us to determine the timing, the quantity and pricing of sales.

This prospectus forms part of a registration statement on Form S-3 that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the “Commission,” using a “shelf” registration process. Before you invest in shares of our common stock, you should read this prospectus, together with additional information described below under the caption “Where You Can Find More Information.”

Any statement made in the prospectus or in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference therein will be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained in this prospectus or in any other subsequently filed document that is also incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus modifies or supersedes that statement. Any statement so modified or superseded will not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus.

We are responsible for the information contained in or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and any related free writing prospectus we have authorized for use in connection with this offering. This prospectus may be used only for the purpose for which it has been prepared. Neither we nor any other person has authorized anyone to provide information different from the information contained in this prospectus and any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein.

We are not making an offer to sell our common stock in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should not assume that the information appearing in this prospectus or any free writing prospectus we have authorized for use in connection with this offering is accurate as of any date other than the date of the applicable document. This prospectus does not constitute an offer or an invitation to subscribe for and purchase any of our securities and may not be used for or in connection with an offer or solicitation by any person, in any jurisdiction in which such an offer or solicitation is not authorized or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such an offer or solicitation.

## SUMMARY

*This summary highlights selected information included elsewhere in or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and does not contain all of the information that you should consider before investing in our common stock. You should read the entire prospectus carefully, especially “Risk Factors” and the financial statements and related notes and other information incorporated by reference into this prospectus, before deciding whether to participate in the offering described in this prospectus. In this prospectus, unless expressly noted or the content indicates otherwise, the words “we,” “us,” “our,” “JAKKS,” “company” and similar references mean JAKKS Pacific, Inc. and its subsidiaries.*

### About JAKKS

We are a leading multi-line, multi-brand toy company that designs, produces, markets, sells and distributes toys and related products, consumables and related products, electronics and related products, kids indoor and outdoor furniture, and other consumer products. We focus our business on acquiring or licensing well-recognized intellectual property (“IP”), trademarks and/or brand names, most with long product histories (“evergreen brands”). We seek to acquire/license these evergreen brands because we believe they are less subject to market fads or trends. We also develop proprietary products marketed under our own trademarks and brand names and have historically acquired complementary businesses to further grow our portfolio. For accounting purposes, our products have been divided into two segments: (i) Toys/Consumer Products and (ii) Costumes. Our products include:

- Action figures and accessories, including licensed characters based on the Nintendo®, Sonic the Hedgehog® and Apex Legends® franchises and our own proprietary brands including Creepy Crawlers™;
- Toy vehicles, including Xtreme Power Dozer®, Xtreme Power Dump Truck®, XPV®, Road Champs®, Fly Wheels® and MXS® toy vehicles and accessories;
- Dolls and accessories, including small dolls, large dolls, fashion dolls and baby dolls based on licenses, including Disney Encanto™, Disney ILY 4EVER™, Disney Frozen®, Disney Princess® and Minnie Mouse®, and infant and pre-school toys based on TV shows like PBS’s Daniel Tiger’s Neighborhood®;
- Private label products developed exclusively for certain retail customers in various product categories;
- Foot-to-floor ride-on products, including those based on Fisher-Price®, Nickelodeon®, and Hasbro®/Entertainment One® licenses and inflatable environments, tents and wagons;
- Role play, dress-up, pretend play and novelty products for boys and girls based on well-known brands and entertainment properties such as Disney Frozen®, Black & Decker®, Disney Princess®, and Disney Encanto™, as well as those based on our own proprietary brands;
- Indoor and outdoor kids’ furniture, activity trays and tables and room décor; kiddie pools, seasonal and outdoor products, including those based on Disney® characters, Nickelodeon®, Hasbro®/Entertainment One® licenses;
- Halloween and everyday costumes for all ages based on licensed and proprietary non-licensed brands, including Super Mario Bros.®, Microsoft’s Halo®, LEGO® Movie, Disney-Pixar Toy Story®, Harry Potter®, Jurassic World®, Sesame Street®, Power Rangers®, Hasbro® brands and Disney Frozen®, Disney Princess® and related Halloween accessories; and
- Outdoor activity toys including Redo Skateboard Co.® and Junior sports toys including Skyball® hyper-charged balls, sport sets and Wave Hoops® toy hoops marketed under our Maui® brand.

We continually review the marketplace to identify and evaluate popular and evergreen brands and product categories that we believe have the potential for growth. We endeavor to generate growth within these lines by:

- creating innovative products under our established licenses and brand names;
- adding new items to the branded product lines that we expect will enjoy greater popularity;
- infusing innovation and technology when appropriate to make products more appealing to today's kids; and
- expanding our international product offering either sold directly to retailers or via third party distributors.

### **Business Strategy**

In addition to developing our own proprietary brands, properties and marks, licensing popular IP enables us to use these high-profile marks at a lower cost than we would incur if we purchased these marks or funded the development of comparable marks on our own. Beyond the investment profile, we have an appreciation of the challenges and expertise required to break through the noise in a world filled with high-budget, content-centric consumer choices either based on well-known pre-existing IP or the even higher hurdle to launch new IP in the aforementioned marketplace. By licensing IP and trademarks from world-class brand owners and content creators, we have access to a far greater range of marks than would be available for purchase. It also helps to credibly assure licensors that we will prioritize their brands, properties and IP rather than explicitly competing with them with a broad-range of self-developed content-led offerings. We also license technology developed by unaffiliated inventors and product developers to enhance the design, innovation and functionality of our products.

We sell our products through our in-house sales staff and independent sales representatives to toy and mass-market retail chain stores, department stores, office supply stores, drug and grocery store chains, club stores, value-oriented dollar stores, toy specialty stores and wholesalers. Our two largest customers are Walmart® and Target®, which accounted for 26.9% and 28.4%, respectively, of our net sales in 2021. No other customer accounted for more than 10% of our net sales in 2021.

### **Corporate Information**

We were formed as a Delaware corporation in 1995. Our principal executive offices are located at 2951 28th Street, Santa Monica, California 90405. Our telephone number is (424) 268-9444 and our Internet Website address is [www.jakks.com](http://www.jakks.com). The contents of our website are not incorporated in or deemed to be a part of this Prospectus.

## THE OFFERING

Issuer	JAKKS Pacific, Inc.
Common stock offered by us in this offering	Shares having an aggregate offering price of up to \$75,000,000.
Manner of offering	“At the market offering” that may be made from time to time through our Agent, B. Riley Securities, Inc., as our agent or principal, pursuant to an At Market Issuance Sales Agreement, or “sales agreement”. See “Plan of Distribution” on page S-8.
Use of proceeds	We currently intend to use the net proceeds from the sale of our common stock under the sales agreement for business development activities, capital expenditures, repayment of debt, working capital and general corporate purposes. See “Use of Proceeds” beginning on page S-6.
Risk factors	Investing in our common stock involves a high degree of risk. See “Risk Factors” beginning on page S-4 of this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus for a discussion of factors you should carefully consider before deciding to invest in our common stock.
Nasdaq Global Select Market symbol	JAKK

## RISK FACTORS

Our business is subject to significant risks. Before you invest in our common stock, you should carefully consider, among other matters, the risks and uncertainties described below, as well as the other information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, including our consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes and the information under the heading “Risk Factors” and elsewhere in our most recent annual report on Form 10-K and quarterly reports on Form 10-Q. See “Information Incorporated by Reference.” If any of the risks and uncertainties described in this prospectus or the documents incorporated by reference herein actually occur, our business, financial condition, or results of operations could be adversely affected in a material way. This could cause the trading price of our common stock to decline, perhaps significantly, and you may lose part or all of your investment. Please note that additional risks not presently known to us or that we currently deem immaterial may also impair our business, financial condition and operations.

### Risks Relating to this Offering

***You will experience immediate dilution in the book value per share of the common stock you purchase in this offering.***

Because the price per share of our common stock being offered is substantially higher than the book value per share of our common stock, you will suffer substantial dilution in the net tangible book value of the common stock you purchase in this offering. Based on the assumed public offering price of \$18.11 per share (the closing sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Global Select Market on October 14, 2022) and assuming that we sell all \$75,000,000 of shares of common stock under this prospectus, and after deducting commissions and estimated aggregate offering expenses payable by us, if you purchase shares of common stock in this offering, you will experience immediate and substantial dilution of \$9.93 per share in the net tangible book value of the common stock. See the section titled “Dilution” below for a more detailed discussion of the dilution you will incur if you purchase common stock in this offering.

***Our management may have broad discretion over the use of the net proceeds from this offering.***

We currently intend to use the net proceeds from the sale of our common stock under the sales agreement for the business development activities, capital expenditures, payment of debt, working capital and corporate purposes. We have not reserved or allocated specific amounts for any of these purposes and we cannot specify with certainty how we will use the net proceeds, although the net proceeds may have to be used to prepay certain debt (See “Use of Proceeds”). Accordingly, our management may have considerable discretion in the application of the net proceeds and you will not have the opportunity, as part of your investment decision, to assess whether the proceeds are being used appropriately. The net proceeds may also be used for corporate purposes that do not increase our operating results or market value. Until the net proceeds are used, they may be placed in investments that do not produce income or that lose value.

***It is not possible to predict the aggregate proceeds resulting from sales made under the sales agreement.***

Subject to certain limitations in the sales agreement and compliance with applicable law, we have the discretion to deliver a placement notice to the Agent at any time throughout the term of the sales agreement. The number of shares that are sold through the Agent after delivering a placement notice will fluctuate based on a number of factors, including the market price of our common stock during the sales period, the limits we set with the Agent in any applicable placement notice, and the demand for our common stock during the sales period. Because the price per share of each share sold will fluctuate during the sales period, it is not currently possible to predict the aggregate proceeds to be raised in connection with those sales.

***The common stock offered hereby will be sold in “at the market offerings,” and investors who buy shares at different times will likely pay different prices.***

Investors who purchase shares in this offering at different times will likely pay different prices, and so may experience different levels of dilution and different outcomes in their investment results. We will have discretion, subject to market demand, to vary the timing, prices, and number of shares sold in this offering. In addition, subject to the final determination by our board of directors, there is no minimum or maximum sales price for shares to be sold in this offering. Investors may experience a decline in the value of the shares they purchase in this offering as a result of sales made at prices lower than the prices they paid.

***Future sales of our common stock could lower our stock price and dilute existing stockholders.***

We may, in the future, sell additional shares of common stock in subsequent public or private offerings. We cannot predict the size of future issuances of our common stock or the effect, if any, that future sales and issuances of shares of our common stock will have on the market price of our common stock. Sales of substantial amounts of our common stock (including shares issued upon the vesting of Restricted Stock Units), or the perception that such sales could occur, may adversely affect prevailing market prices for our common stock. In addition, these sales may be dilutive to existing stockholders.

## SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

All statements in this prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference that are not historical facts should be considered “Forward Looking Statements” within the meaning of the “Safe Harbor” provisions of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. Such statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that may cause actual results, performance or achievements of the Company to be materially different from any future results, performance or achievements expressed or implied by the forward-looking statements. Some of the forward-looking statements can be identified by the use words such as “believe,” “expect,” “may,” “estimates,” “should,” “seek,” “approximately,” “intend,” “plan,” “estimate,” “project,” “continue” or “anticipates” or similar expressions or words, or the negatives of those expressions or words. These statements may be made directly in this prospectus and they may also be incorporated by reference in this prospectus from other documents filed with the SEC, and include, but are not limited to, statements about future financial and operating results and performance, statements about our plans, objectives, expectations and intentions with respect to future operations, products and services, and other statements that are not historical facts. These forward-looking statements are based upon the current beliefs and expectations of our management and are inherently subject to significant business, economic and competitive uncertainties and contingencies, many of which are difficult to predict and generally beyond our control. In addition, these forward-looking statements are subject to assumptions with respect to future business strategies and decisions that are subject to change. Actual results may differ materially from the anticipated results discussed in these forward-looking statements.

Some of the important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from our expectations are disclosed under “Risk Factors” and elsewhere in this prospectus. All subsequent written and oral forward-looking statements attributable to us, or persons acting on our behalf, are expressly qualified in their entirety by these cautionary statements. Additional risks, uncertainties, and other factors are incorporated herein by reference to our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and our subsequent Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, along with the other information contained in this prospectus, as updated by our subsequent filings under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the “Exchange Act.” Except as otherwise required by applicable securities laws, we undertake no obligation to publicly update or revise any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events, changed circumstances, or any other reason, after the date of this prospectus.

### USE OF PROCEEDS

We may issue and sell shares of our common stock having aggregate sales proceeds of up to \$75.0 million from time to time.

Because there is no minimum offering amount required as a condition to close this offering, the actual total public offering amount, commissions and proceeds to us, if any, are not determinable at this time. There can be no assurance that we will sell any shares under or fully utilize the sales agreement as a source of financing. We estimate that the net proceeds from the sale of the shares of common stock that we are offering may be up to approximately \$72,500,000 after deducting the Agent's commission and estimated offering expenses payable by us, assuming we sell the maximum amount under the sales agreement.

Except as otherwise set forth in a prospectus supplement or in other offering materials we intend to use the net proceeds from the sale of our securities for general corporate purposes, which may include repayment or refinancing of indebtedness, capital expenditures and working capital. Pursuant to the terms of our 2021 BSP Term Loan, we may be required to use the funds raised hereunder to make mandatory, penalty free, prepayments of our 2021 BSP Term Loan. Pending any of these uses, the net proceeds of a sale will be held in interest-bearing bank accounts or invested in readily marketable, interest-bearing securities. The applicable prospectus supplement will provide more details on the use of proceeds of any specific offering. If any of the net proceeds from the offered securities will be used for acquisitions, we will identify the acquisition in the applicable prospectus supplement.

On June 2, 2021, we, and certain of our subsidiaries, as borrowers, entered into a First Lien Term Loan Facility Credit Agreement with Benefit Street Partners L.L.C., as Sole Lead Arranger, and BSP Agency, LLC, as agent, for a \$99.0 million first-lien secured term loan (the “2021 BSP Term Loan”). Amounts outstanding under the 2021 BSP Term Loan will bear interest at either (i) LIBOR plus 6.50% - 7.00% (determined by reference to a net leverage pricing grid), subject to a 1.00% LIBOR floor, or (ii) base rate plus 5.50% - 6.00% (determined by reference to a net leverage pricing grid), subject to a 2.00% base rate floor. The terms of the 2021 BSP Term Loan require that in financings such as that contemplated by this Prospectus Supplement, the proceeds must be used to prepay the 2021 BSP Term Loan. The 2021 BSP Term Loan matures in June 2027. On June 27, 2022, as permitted by the terms of the 2021 BSP Term Loan, we made a voluntary fee-free \$10.0 million prepayment towards the outstanding principal amount of the 2021 BSP Term Loan and on September 28, 2022 we made an additional voluntary prepayment of \$17.5 million. As of October 14, 2022, \$69.5 million is outstanding under the 2021 BSP Term Loan.

Pending such uses, we may temporarily invest the net proceeds in short-term investments.

The amounts and timing of our actual expenditures will depend on numerous factors, including the factors described under “Risk Factors” in this prospectus and in the documents incorporated by reference herein, as well as the amount of cash used in our operations. We may find it necessary or advisable to use the net proceeds for other purposes, and subject to the repayment provision of our 2021 BSP Term Loan, management will have flexibility in applying the net proceeds of this offering.

## DILUTION

If you invest in our common stock in this offering, your ownership interest will be diluted to the extent of the difference between the public offering price per share and our pro forma net tangible book value per share after this offering. We calculate net tangible book value per share by dividing our net tangible book value, which is tangible assets less total liabilities, by the number of outstanding shares of our common stock.

Our net tangible book value as of June 30, 2022 was approximately \$39.7 million, or \$4.15 per share. After giving effect to the sale by us of 4,141,358 shares of common stock offered hereby at the assumed public offering price of \$18.11 per share (the closing sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Global Select Market on October 14, 2022) and after deducting the sales agent commission and estimated offering expenses payable by us in an aggregate amount of \$2,500,000, our pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value as of June 30, 2022 would have been approximately \$112.3 million, or \$8.18 per share. This represents an immediate increase in as adjusted net tangible book value of \$4.03 per share to existing stockholders and an immediate dilution of \$9.93 per share to new investors purchasing our common stock in this offering. The following table illustrates the per share dilution to investors purchasing shares of common stock in this offering:

Assumed public offering price of common stock		\$	18.11
Net tangible book value per share as of June 30, 2022	\$	4.15	
Increase per share in net tangible book value after this offering	\$	4.03	
As adjusted net tangible book value per share as of June 30, 2022, after giving effect to this effect to the offering		\$	8.18
Dilution per share to new investors		\$	9.93

The table above assumes for illustrative purposes that an aggregate of 4,141,358 shares of our common stock are sold during the term of the sales agreement at a price of \$18.11 per share (the closing sale price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Global Select Market on October 14, 2022) for aggregate gross proceeds of approximately \$75.0 million. The shares sold in this offering, if any, will be sold from time to time at various prices.

The information discussed above is illustrative only and may change based on the actual public offering price and other terms of this offering determined at each sale under the sales agreement.

The above table is based on 9,587,806 shares of common stock issued and outstanding as of June 30, 2022:

- 1,113,010 shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of outstanding unvested Restricted Stock Units issued pursuant to the 2002 Stock Award and Incentive Plan; and
- 1,402,485 shares of common stock available for future grants of stock or options under the 2002 Stock Award and Incentive Plan.

To the extent that the above issued and unvested Restricted Stock Units vest and the underlying shares of common stock are issued, the pro forma net tangible book value per share of our common stock after giving effect to this offering would be \$7.57 per share, and the dilution in net tangible book value per share to purchasers in this offering would be \$10.54 per share. In addition, we may choose to raise additional capital due to market conditions or strategic considerations. To the extent that additional capital is raised through the sale of securities, the issuance of those securities could result in further dilution to our stockholders.



## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We have entered into the Sales Agreement with B. Riley Securities under which we may offer and sell, from time to time through B. Riley Securities, acting as agent or principal, shares of Common Stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$75,000,000. Sales of Common Stock, if any, under this prospectus supplement may be made in transactions that are deemed to be “at the market offerings” as defined in Rule 415 under the Securities Act.

Each time we wish to issue and sell our Common Stock under the Sales Agreement, we will notify B. Riley Securities of the number or dollar value of shares to be issued, the dates on which such sales are anticipated to be made, any limitation on the number of shares that may be sold in one day, any minimum price below which sales may not be made and other sales parameters as we deem appropriate. Once we have so instructed B. Riley Securities, unless B. Riley Securities declines to accept the terms of the notice, B. Riley Securities has agreed to use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices to sell such shares up to the amount specified on such terms. The obligations of B. Riley Securities under the sales agreement to sell our Common Stock are subject to a number of conditions that we must meet. We may instruct B. Riley Securities not to sell our Common Stock if the sales cannot be effected at or above the price designated by us in any such instruction. B. Riley Securities or we may suspend the offering of Common Stock upon proper notice to the other party and subject to other conditions. B. Riley Securities and we each have the right, by giving written notice as specified in the Sales Agreement, to terminate the Sales Agreement in each party’s sole discretion at any time upon five days’ prior notice.

Under the terms of the Sales Agreement, we may also sell our Common Stock to B. Riley Securities, as principal for its own account, at a price negotiated at the time of sale, provided that no sales may be made in a privately negotiated transaction without our prior consent.

We will pay B. Riley Securities commissions for its services in acting as agent in the sale of Common Stock at a commission rate of 3.0% of the gross sale price per share sold. Because there is no minimum offering amount required as a condition to close this offering, the actual total public offering amount, commissions and proceeds to us, if any, are not determinable at this time. We have also agreed to reimburse B. Riley Securities for certain specified fees and documented expenses, including the fees and documented expenses of its legal counsel in an amount not to exceed \$75,000, plus an additional amount not to exceed \$5,000 per fiscal quarter on an ongoing basis during the term of the Sales Agreement, as provided in the Sales Agreement. We estimate that the total expenses for the offering, excluding compensation and reimbursements payable to B. Riley Securities under the Sales Agreement, will be \$2,250,000 if we sold the entire \$75,000,000 shares of Common Stock.

Settlement for sales of Common Stock will occur on the second business day following the date on which any sales are made, or on some other date that is agreed upon by us and B. Riley Securities in connection with a particular transaction, in return for payment of the net proceeds to us. Sales of our Common Stock as contemplated in this prospectus supplement will be settled through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company or by such other means as we and B. Riley Securities may agree upon. There is no arrangement for funds to be received in an escrow, trust or similar arrangement.

In connection with the sale of the shares of Common Stock on our behalf, B. Riley Securities will be deemed to be an underwriter within the meaning of the Securities Act, and B. Riley Securities’ compensation will be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts. We have agreed to provide indemnification and contribution to B. Riley Securities against certain liabilities, including civil liabilities under the Securities Act.

The offering of shares of our Common Stock pursuant to the Sales Agreement will terminate upon the earlier of (1) the issuance and sale of all Common Stock subject to the Sales Agreement; and (2) the termination of the Sales Agreement as permitted therein.

B. Riley Securities and its affiliates may in the future provide various investment banking and other financial services for us and our affiliates, for which services they may in the future receive customary fees. To the extent required by Regulation M, B. Riley Securities will not engage in any market making activities involving our Common Stock while the offering is ongoing under this prospectus supplement. This summary of the material provisions of the Sales Agreement does not purport to be a complete statement of its terms and conditions. Copies of the Sales Agreement are filed with the SEC and are incorporated by reference into the registration statement of which this prospectus supplement is a part.

## LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the securities offered hereby will be passed upon for us by Feder Kaszovitz LLP, New York, New York. B. Riley Securities is being represented in connection with this offering by Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP, Palo Alto, California.

## EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of JAKKS Pacific, Inc. as of December 31, 2021 and 2020 and for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2021 incorporated by reference in this Prospectus and in the Registration Statement have been so incorporated in reliance on the report of BDO USA, LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, incorporated herein by reference, given on the authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting.

## AVAILABLE INFORMATION

We are subject to the informational requirements of the Exchange Act, and file reports, proxy statements and other information with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the “Commission” or the “SEC.” We have also filed a registration statement on Form S-3 with the Commission. This prospectus, which forms part of the registration statement, does not have all of the information contained in the registration statement. The Commission also maintains a website that contains reports, proxy statements and other information, including the registration statement. The website address is: <http://www.sec.gov>.

## INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The Commission allows us to “incorporate by reference” into this prospectus the information we file with them. The information we incorporate by reference into this prospectus is an important part of this prospectus. Any statement in a document we have filed with the Commission prior to the date of this prospectus and which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus will be considered to be modified or superseded to the extent a statement contained in the prospectus or any other subsequently filed document that is incorporated by reference into this prospectus modifies or supersedes that statement. The modified or superseded statement will not be considered to be a part of this prospectus, except as modified or superseded.

We incorporate by reference into this prospectus the information contained in the following documents, which is considered to be a part of this prospectus:

- Our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended [December 31, 2021](#).
- Our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended [March 31, 2022](#).
- Our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended [June 30, 2022](#).
- Our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed on [February 17, 2022](#), [April 1, 2022](#), [May 2, 2022](#), [July 28, 2022](#) and [August 4, 2022](#).
- The description of our common stock contained in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A (File No. 0-28104), filed March 29, 1996, and as incorporated therein by reference to our Registration Statement on Form SB-2 (Reg. No. 333-2048-LA).

All documents subsequently filed by us with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 and 15(d) of the Exchange Act (other than current reports on Form 8-K furnished pursuant to Item 2.02 or Item 7.01 of Form 8-K, including any exhibits included with such information, unless otherwise indicated therein) prior to the termination or completion of the offering made pursuant to this prospectus are also incorporated herein by reference and will automatically update and supersede information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus.

We will provide each person to whom a copy of this prospectus has been delivered, without charge, upon receipt of a written or oral request, a copy of any of the documents referred to above as being incorporated by reference. You may request a copy by writing or telephoning John L. Kimble, c/o JAKKS Pacific, Inc., 2951 28<sup>th</sup> Street, Santa Monica, California, 90405 (telephone: 424-268-9444).

No dealer, salesperson, or other person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representation not contained in this prospectus, and, if given or made, such information and representation should not be relied upon as having been authorized by us. This prospectus does not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy any of the securities offered by this prospectus in any jurisdiction or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer or solicitation. Neither the delivery of this prospectus nor any sale made hereunder shall under any circumstances create an implication that there has been no change in the facts set forth in this prospectus or in our affairs since the date hereof.

**No person is authorized to give any information or to make any representation not contained in this prospectus. You must not rely on any unauthorized representations or information. This prospectus is an offer to sell only the common stock offered hereby, and only under circumstances and in jurisdictions where it is lawful to do so. The information contained in this prospectus is current only as of its date.**

**JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.**

**Up To \$75,000,000**

**Common Stock**

**PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT**

**B. RILEY SECURITIES**

**October 20, 2022**

**S-10**

---

**PART II**

**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**ITEM 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution**

The following table sets forth the costs and expenses payable by the Registrant in connection with the sale of the securities being registered hereby. All amounts are estimates except the registration fee.

Accountant Fees and Expenses	\$ 40,000
SEC Filing Fee	\$ 11,399
Legal Fees and Expenses	\$ 125,000
Total (1)	<u>\$ 176,399</u>

- (1) Estimated expenses are not presently known. The foregoing sets forth the general categories of expenses (other than underwriting discounts and commissions) that we anticipate we will incur in connection with the offering of securities under this registration statement on Form S-3. An estimate of the aggregate expenses in connection with the issuance and distribution of the securities being offered will be included in the applicable prospectus supplement.

**ITEM 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.**

Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that the personal liability of our directors shall be limited to the fullest extent permitted by the provisions of Section 102(b)(7) of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (“DGCL”). Section 102(b)(7) of the DGCL generally provides that no director shall be liable personally to a company or its security holders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, provided that the certificate of incorporation does not eliminate the liability of a director for (1) any breach of the director’s duty of loyalty to it or its security holders; (2) acts or omissions not in good faith or that involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law; (3) acts or omissions in respect of certain unlawful dividend payments or stock redemptions or repurchases; or (4) any transaction from which such director derives an improper personal benefit. The effect of this provision is to eliminate the rights of a company and its security holders to recover monetary damages against a director for breach of her or his fiduciary duty of care as a director (including breaches resulting from negligent or grossly negligent behavior) except in the situations described in clauses (1) through (4) above. The limitations summarized above, however, do not affect the ability of a company or its security holders to seek nonmonetary remedies, such as an injunction or rescission, against a director for breach of her or his fiduciary duty.

In addition, our certificate of incorporation provides that we shall, to the fullest extent permitted by Section 145 of the DGCL, indemnify all persons whom it may indemnify pursuant to Section 145 of the DGCL. In general, Section 145 of the DGCL permits us to indemnify our directors, officers, employees or agents or, when so serving at our request, as directors, officers, agents or employees of another company, who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any proceeding because of his or her position, if he or she acted in good faith and in a manner reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to our best interests and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his or her conduct was unlawful.

We maintain a directors’ and officers’ liability insurance policy covering certain liabilities that may be incurred by any director or officer in connection with the performance of his or her duties and certain liabilities that we may incur, including the indemnification payable to any director or officer. This policy provides for \$60.0 million in maximum aggregate coverage, including defense costs. We pay the entire premium for such insurance.

## ITEM 16.

### Exhibits.

The following exhibits are filed or incorporated by reference as part of this Registration Statement.

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
1.1	<a href="#">At Market Issuance Sales Agreement between Registrant and B. Riley Securities, Inc. dated October 20, 2022</a>
1.2**	Form of Underwriting Agreement for the securities offered hereby
4.1**	Specimen Preferred Stock Certificate
4.2	<a href="#">Form of Indenture</a>
4.3**	Form of Debt Security
4.4**	Form of Warrant Agreement
4.5**	Form of Warrant Certificate
4.6**	Form of Rights Agreement
4.7**	Form of Rights Certificate
4.8**	Form of Unit Agreement
5.1	<a href="#">Opinion of Feder Kaszovitz LLP.</a>
23.1	<a href="#">Consent of BDO USA, LLP.</a>
23.2	<a href="#">Consent of Feder Kaszovitz LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1).</a>
24.1	<a href="#">Power of attorney (set forth on signature page)</a>
25.1***	Statement of Eligibility under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, of the Trustee, as Trustee under the Indenture filed as Exhibit 4.2 above
107	<a href="#">Filing Fees</a>

\*\* To be filed by amendment or incorporated by reference in connection with the offering of the securities.

\*\*\* To be filed pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939.

## ITEM 17. Undertakings.

The undersigned Registrant hereby undertakes:

- (1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:
  - (i) To include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the "Securities Act";
  - (ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20 % change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective Registration Statement; and
  - (iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

*provided, however*, that paragraphs (1)(i), (1)(ii) and (1)(iii) do not apply if the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the Registrant pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the "Exchange Act," that are incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

- (2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.
- (4) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act to any purchaser:
- (i) each prospectus filed by the Registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and
  - (ii) each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5) or (b)(7) as part of the registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii) or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by Section 10(a) of the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.
- (5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of a Registrant under the Securities Act to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, the undersigned Registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned Registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned Registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:
- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned Registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
  - (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned Registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned Registrant;
  - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned Registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned Registrant; and
  - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned Registrant to the purchaser.
- (6) The undersigned Registrant hereby undertakes that for the purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each filing of the Registrant's annual report, pursuant to Section 13(a) or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to section 15(d) of the Exchange Act) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the Registrant pursuant to the provisions set forth in response to Item 15, or otherwise, the Registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the Registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the Registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the Registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the Registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of Santa Monica, State of California, on October 20, 2022

### JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.

By: /s/ STEPHEN G. BERMAN

Stephen G. Berman  
*Chief Executive Officer*

We, the undersigned officers and directors of JAKKS Pacific, Inc., and each of us, do hereby constitute and appoint Stephen G. Berman as our true and lawful attorney with full power to sign for us and in our names in the capacities indicated below any and all amendments (including post-effective amendments) to the registration statement filed herewith as well as any registration statement for the same offering covered by this registration statement that is to be effective upon filing pursuant to Rule 462(b) of the Securities Act of 1933, and generally do all such things in our names and in our capacities as officers and directors to enable JAKKS Pacific, Inc. to comply with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, and all requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereby ratifying and confirming our signatures as they may be signed by our said attorneys, or any of them, to said registration statements and any and all amendments thereto.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ STEPHEN G. BERMAN</u> Stephen G. Berman	Director and Chief Executive Officer	October 20, 2022
<u>/s/ JOHN L. KIMBLE</u> John L. Kimble	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	October 20, 2022
<u>/s/ CAROLE LEVINE</u> Carole Levine	Director	October 20, 2022
<u>/s/ JOSHUA CASCADE</u> Joshua Cascade	Director	October 20, 2022
<u>/s/ MATTHEW WINKLER</u> Matthew Winkler	Director	October 20, 2022
<u>/s/ ALEXANDER SHOGLI</u> Alexander Shoghi	Director	October 20, 2022
<u>/s/ LORI MACPHERSON</u> Lori MacPherson	Director	October 20, 2022
<u>/s/ ZHAO XIAOQIANG</u> Zhao Xiaoqiang	Director	October 20, 2022

## JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.

Common Stock  
(par value \$0.001 per share)

## At Market Issuance Sales Agreement

October [20], 2022

B. Riley Securities, Inc.  
299 Park Avenue, 21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10171

Ladies and Gentlemen:

JAKKS Pacific, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), confirms its agreement (this “**Agreement**”) with B. Riley Securities, Inc. (the “**Agent**”), as follows:

1. **Issuance and Sale of Shares.** The Company agrees that, from time to time during the term of this Agreement, on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth herein, it may issue and sell through or to the Agent, as sales agent or principal, shares (the “**Placement Shares**”) of the Company’s Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”); *provided, however*, that in no event shall the Company issue or sell through the Agent such number or dollar amount of Placement Shares that would (a) exceed the number or dollar amount of shares of Common Stock registered on the effective Registration Statement (defined below) pursuant to which the offering is being made, (b) exceed the number of authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock (less shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise, conversion or exchange of any outstanding securities of the Company or otherwise reserved from the Company’s authorized capital stock), (c) exceed the number or dollar amount of shares of Common Stock permitted to be sold under Form S-3 (including General Instruction I.B.6 thereof, if applicable) or (d) exceed the number or dollar amount of shares of Common Stock for which the Company has filed a Prospectus Supplement (defined below) (the lesser of (a), (b), (c) and (d), the “**Maximum Amount**”). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, the parties hereto agree that compliance with the limitations set forth in this **Section 1** on the amount of Placement Shares issued and sold under this Agreement shall be the sole responsibility of the Company and that the Agent shall have no obligation in connection with such compliance. The offer and sale of Placement Shares through the Agent will be effected pursuant to the Registration Statement (as defined below), although nothing in this Agreement shall be construed as requiring the Company to use the Registration Statement to issue Placement Shares.

The Company has filed, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”) and the rules and regulations thereunder (the “**Securities Act Regulations**”), with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”) a registration statement on Form S-3, including a base prospectus, relating to certain securities, including the Placement Shares to be issued from time to time by the Company, and which incorporates by reference documents that the Company has filed or will file in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “**Exchange Act**”), and the rules and regulations thereunder. The Company has prepared a prospectus or a prospectus supplement to

---



the base prospectus included as part of the registration statement, which prospectus or prospectus supplement relates to the Placement Shares to be issued from time to time by the Company (the “**Prospectus Supplement**”). The Company will furnish to the Agent, for use by the Agent, copies of the prospectus included as part of such registration statement, as supplemented by the Prospectus Supplement, relating to the Placement Shares to be issued from time to time by the Company. The Company may file one or more additional registration statements from time to time that will contain a base prospectus and related prospectus or prospectus supplement, if applicable (which shall be a Prospectus Supplement), with respect to the Placement Shares. Except where the context otherwise requires, such registration statement(s), including all documents filed as part thereof or incorporated by reference therein, and including any information contained in a Prospectus (as defined below) subsequently filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act Regulations or deemed to be a part of such registration statement pursuant to Rule 430B of the Securities Act Regulations, is herein called the “**Registration Statement**.” The base prospectus or base prospectuses, including all documents incorporated therein by reference to the extent such information has not been superseded or modified in accordance with Rule 412 under the Securities Act Regulations (as qualified by Rule 430B(g) of the Securities Act Regulations), included in the Registration Statement, as it may be supplemented, if necessary, by the Prospectus Supplement, in the form in which such prospectus or prospectuses and/or Prospectus Supplement have most recently

been filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act Regulations, together with the then issued Issuer Free Writing Prospectus(es) (defined below), is herein called the “**Prospectus**.”

Any reference herein to the Registration Statement, any Prospectus Supplement, Prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus shall be deemed to refer to and include the documents, if any, incorporated by reference therein (the “**Incorporated Documents**”), including, unless the context otherwise requires, the documents, if any, filed as exhibits to such Incorporated Documents. Any reference herein to the terms “amend,” “amendment” or “supplement” with respect to the Registration Statement, any Prospectus Supplement, the Prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus shall be deemed to refer to and include the filing of any document under the Exchange Act on or after the most-recent effective date of the Registration Statement, or the date of the Prospectus Supplement, Prospectus or such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, as the case may be, and incorporated therein by reference. For purposes of this Agreement, all references to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or to any amendment or supplement thereto shall be deemed to include the most recent copy filed with the Commission pursuant to its Electronic Data Gathering Analysis and Retrieval system, or if applicable, the Interactive Data Electronic Application system when used by the Commission (collectively, “**EDGAR**”).

2. **Placements.** Each time that the Company wishes to issue and sell Placement Shares hereunder (each, a “**Placement**”), it will notify the Agent by email notice (or other method mutually agreed to by the parties) of the number of Placement Shares to be issued, the time period during which sales are requested to be made, any limitation on the number of Placement Shares that may be sold in any one day and any minimum price below which sales may not be made (a “**Placement Notice**”), the form of which is attached hereto as Schedule 1. The Placement Notice shall originate from any of the individuals from the Company set forth on Schedule 3 (with a copy to each of the other individuals from the Company listed on such schedule), and shall be addressed

to each of the individuals from the Agent set forth on Schedule 3, as such Schedule 3 may be amended from time to time. The Placement Notice shall be effective unless and until (i) the Agent declines in writing to accept the terms contained therein for any reason, in its sole discretion, which declination must occur within two (2) Business Days of the receipt of the Placement Notice, (ii) the entire amount of the Placement Shares thereunder have been sold, (iii) the Company amends, supersedes, suspends or terminates the Placement Notice or (iv) this Agreement has been terminated under the provisions of Section 13. The amount of any discount, commission or other compensation to be paid by the Company to the Agent in connection with the Agent's sale of the Placement Shares shall be calculated in accordance with the terms set forth in Schedule 2. It is expressly acknowledged and agreed that neither the Company nor the Agent will have any obligation whatsoever with respect to a Placement or any Placement Shares unless and until the Company delivers a Placement Notice to the Agent and the Agent does not decline (and the Company does not suspend or terminate) such Placement Notice pursuant to the terms set forth above, and then only upon the terms specified therein and herein. In the event of a conflict between the terms of this Agreement and the terms of a Placement Notice, the terms of the Placement Notice will control.

3. Sale of Placement Shares by the Agent. Subject to the provisions of Section 5(a), for the period specified in the Placement Notice, the Agent will use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices and applicable state and federal laws, rules and regulations and the rules of the Nasdaq Stock Market, to sell the Placement Shares up to the amount specified, and otherwise in accordance with the terms of such Placement Notice. The Agent will provide written confirmation to the Company no later than the opening of the Trading Day (as defined below) immediately following the Trading Day on which it has made sales of Placement Shares hereunder setting forth the number of Placement Shares sold on such day, the compensation payable by the Company to the Agent pursuant to Section 2 with respect to such sales, and the Net Proceeds (as defined below) payable to the Company, with an itemization of the deductions made by the Agent (as set forth in Section 5(b)) from the gross proceeds that it receives from such sales. Subject to the terms of the Placement Notice, the Agent may sell Placement Shares by any method permitted by law deemed to be an "at the market offering" as defined in Rule 415(a)(4) of the Securities Act Regulations, including sales made directly on or through the Nasdaq Global Select Market (the "Exchange") or any other existing trading market for the Common Stock, in negotiated transactions at market prices prevailing at the time of sale or at prices related to such prevailing market prices and/or any other method permitted by law. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no sale may be made in a privately negotiated transaction by the Agent pursuant to this Agreement without the prior written consent of the Company. "Trading Day" means any day on which Common Stock is traded on the Exchange.

4. Suspension of Sales. The Company or the Agent may, upon notice to the other party in writing (including by email correspondence to each of the individuals of the other party set forth on Schedule 3, if receipt of such correspondence is actually acknowledged by any of the individuals to whom the notice is sent, other than via auto-reply) or by telephone (confirmed immediately by verifiable facsimile transmission or email correspondence to each of the individuals of the other party set forth on Schedule 3), suspend any sale of Placement Shares (a "Suspension"); *provided, however*, that such Suspension shall not affect or impair any party's obligations with respect to any Placement Shares sold hereunder prior to the receipt of such notice. While a Suspension is in effect, any obligation under Sections 7(l), 7(m), and 7(n) with respect to

the delivery of certificates, opinions, or comfort letters to the Agent, shall be waived. Each of the parties agrees that no such notice under this Section 4 shall be effective against any other party unless it is made to one of the individuals named on Schedule 3 hereto, as such Schedule may be amended from time to time.

5. Sale and Delivery to the Agent; Settlement.

(a) Sale of Placement Shares. On the basis of the representations and warranties herein contained and subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, upon the Agent's acceptance of the terms of a Placement Notice, and unless the sale of the Placement Shares described therein has been declined, suspended, or otherwise terminated in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, the Agent, for the period specified in the Placement Notice, will use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices and applicable law and regulations to sell such Placement Shares up to the amount specified, and otherwise in accordance with the terms of such Placement Notice. The Company acknowledges and agrees that (i) there can be no assurance that the Agent will be successful in selling Placement Shares, (ii) the Agent will incur no liability or obligation to the Company or any other person or entity if it does not sell Placement Shares for any reason other than a failure by the Agent to use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices and applicable law and regulations to sell such Placement Shares as required under this Agreement and (iii) the Agent shall be under no obligation to purchase Placement Shares on a principal basis pursuant to this Agreement, except as otherwise agreed by the Agent and the Company.

(b) Settlement of Placement Shares. Unless otherwise specified in the applicable Placement Notice, settlement for sales of Placement Shares will occur on the second (2nd) Trading Day (or such earlier day as is industry practice for regular-way trading) following the date on which such sales are made (each, a "Settlement Date"). The Agent shall notify the Company of each sale of Placement Shares no later than the opening of the Trading Day immediately following the Trading Day on which it has made sales of Placement Shares hereunder. The amount of proceeds to be delivered to the Company on a Settlement Date against receipt of the Placement Shares sold (the "Net Proceeds") will be equal to the aggregate sales price received by the Agent, after deduction for (i) the Agent's commission, discount or other compensation for such sales payable by the Company pursuant to Section 2 hereof, and (ii) any transaction fees imposed by any Governmental Authority (as defined below) in respect of such sales.

(c) Delivery of Placement Shares. On or before each Settlement Date, the Company will, or will cause its transfer agent to, electronically transfer the Placement Shares being sold by crediting the account of the Agent, or its designee's account (provided the Agent shall have given the Company written notice of such designee and such designee's account information at least one Trading Day prior to the Settlement Date) at The Depository Trust Company through its Deposit and Withdrawal at Custodian System or by such other means of delivery as may be mutually agreed upon by the parties hereto which in all cases shall be freely tradable, transferable, registered shares in good deliverable form. On each Settlement Date, the Agent will deliver the related Net Proceeds in same day funds to an account designated by the Company on, or prior to, the Settlement Date. Upon request by the Company, the Agent will provide DWAC instructions or other instructions for delivery by other means with respect to the transfer of the Placement Shares being sold. The Company agrees that if the Company, or its transfer agent (if applicable),

defaults in its obligation to deliver Placement Shares on a Settlement Date, the Company agrees that in addition to and in no way limiting the rights and obligations set forth in Section 11(a) hereto, it will (i) hold the Agent harmless against any loss, claim, damage, or reasonable, documented expense (including reasonable and documented legal fees and expenses), as incurred, arising out of or in connection with such default by the Company or its transfer agent (if applicable) through no fault of the Agent and (ii) pay to the Agent (without duplication) any commission, discount, or other compensation to which it would otherwise have been entitled absent such default.

(d) Denominations; Registration. Certificates for the Placement Shares, if any, shall be in such denominations and registered in such names as the Agent may request in writing at least one full Business Day (as defined below) before the Settlement Date. The certificates for the Placement Shares, if any, will be made available by the Company for examination and packaging by the Agent in The City of New York not later than noon (New York time) on the Business Day prior to the Settlement Date.

(e) Limitations on Offering Size. Under no circumstances shall the Company cause or request the offer or sale of any Placement Shares if, after giving effect to the sale of such Placement Shares, the aggregate gross sales proceeds of Placement Shares sold pursuant to this Agreement would exceed the lesser of (A) together with all sales of Placement Shares under this Agreement, the Maximum Amount and (B) the amount authorized from time to time to be issued and sold under this Agreement by the Company's board of directors, a duly authorized committee thereof or a duly authorized executive committee, and notified to the Agent in writing. Under no circumstances shall the Company cause or request the offer or sale of any Placement Shares pursuant to this Agreement at a price lower than the minimum price authorized from time to time by the Company's board of directors, a duly authorized committee thereof or a duly authorized executive committee. Further, under no circumstances shall the Company cause or permit the aggregate offering amount of Placement Shares sold pursuant to this Agreement to exceed the Maximum Amount.

6. Representations and Warranties of the Company<sup>1</sup>. The Company represents and warrants to, and agrees with the Agent that as of the date of this Agreement and as of each Applicable Time (as defined below), unless such representation, warranty or agreement specifies a different date or time:

(a) Registration Statement and Prospectus. The Company and the transactions contemplated by this Agreement meet the requirements for and comply with the applicable conditions set forth in Form S-3 (including General Instructions I.A and I.B) under the Securities Act. The Registration Statement has been filed with the Commission and has been declared effective by the Commission under the Securities Act prior to the issuance of any Placement Notices by the Company. The Prospectus Supplement will name the Agent as the agent in the section entitled "Plan of Distribution." The Company has not received, and has no notice of, any order of the Commission preventing or suspending the use of the Registration Statement, or threatening or instituting proceedings for that purpose. The Registration Statement and the offer and sale of Placement Shares as contemplated hereby meet the requirements of Rule 415 under the Securities Act and comply in all material respects with said Rule. Any statutes, regulations,

---

<sup>1</sup> Additional reps and warranties may be included subject to completion of due diligence.

contracts or other documents that are required to be described in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or to be filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement have been so described or filed. Copies of the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, and any such amendments or supplements and all documents incorporated by reference therein that were filed with the Commission on or prior to the date of this Agreement have been delivered, or are available through EDGAR, to the Agent and its counsel. The Company has not distributed and, prior to the later to occur of each Settlement Date and completion of the distribution of the Placement Shares, will not distribute any offering material in connection with the offering or sale of the Placement Shares other than the Registration Statement and the Prospectus and any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus (as defined below) to which the Agent has consented, any such consent not to be unreasonably withheld, conditioned or delayed, or that is required by applicable law or the listing maintenance requirements of the Exchange. The Common Stock is registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act and is currently listed on the Exchange under the trading symbol "JAKK." The Company has taken no action designed to, or likely to have the effect of, terminating the registration of the Common Stock under the Exchange Act, delisting the Common Stock from the Exchange, nor has the Company received, in the 12 months preceding the date hereof, any notification that the Commission or the Exchange is contemplating terminating such registration or listing. To the Company's knowledge, it is in compliance with all applicable listing requirements of the Exchange.

(b) No Misstatement or Omission. The Registration Statement, when it became or becomes effective, and the Prospectus, and any amendment or supplement thereto, on the date of such Prospectus or amendment or supplement, conformed and will conform in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act. At each Settlement Date, the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, as of such date, will conform in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act. The Registration Statement, when it became or becomes effective, did not, and will not, contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading. The Prospectus and any amendment and supplement thereto, on the date thereof and at each Applicable Time (defined below), did not or will not include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The documents incorporated by reference in the Prospectus or any Prospectus Supplement did not, and any further documents filed and incorporated by reference therein will not, when filed with the Commission, contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated in such document or necessary to make the statements in such document, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The foregoing shall not apply to statements in, or omissions from, any such document made in reliance upon, and in conformity with, information furnished to the Company by the Agent specifically for use in the preparation thereof.

(c) Conformity with Securities Act and Exchange Act. The Registration Statement, the Prospectus, any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto, and the documents incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto, when such documents were or are filed with the Commission under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act or became or become effective under the Securities Act, as the case may be, conformed or will conform in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, as applicable.

(d) Financial Information. The consolidated financial statements of the Company included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses, if any, together with the related notes and schedules, present fairly, in all material respects, the consolidated financial position of the Company and the Subsidiaries (as defined below) as of the dates indicated and the consolidated results of operations, cash flows and changes in stockholders' equity of the Company for the periods specified (subject, in the case of unaudited financial statements, to normal year-end audit adjustments) and have been prepared in compliance with the requirements of the Securities Act and Exchange Act, as applicable and in conformity with GAAP (as defined below) applied on a consistent basis (except (i) for such adjustments to accounting standards and practices as are noted therein and (ii) in the case of unaudited interim statements, to the extent they may exclude footnotes or may be condensed or summary statements) during the periods involved; the other financial and statistical data with respect to the Company and the Subsidiaries (as defined below) contained or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses, if any, are accurately and fairly presented and prepared on a basis consistent with the financial statements and books and records of the Company; there are no financial statements (historical or pro forma) that are required to be included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, or the Prospectus that are not included or incorporated by reference as required; the Company and the Subsidiaries (as defined below) do not have any material liabilities or obligations, direct or contingent (including any off-balance sheet obligations), not described in the Registration Statement (excluding the exhibits thereto), and the Prospectus which are required to be described in the Registration Statement or Prospectus; and all disclosures contained or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses, if any, regarding "non-GAAP financial measures" (as such term is defined by the rules and regulations of the Commission) comply in all material respects with Regulation G of the Exchange Act and Item 10 of Regulation S-K under the Securities Act, to the extent applicable. The interactive data in eXtensible Business Reporting Language included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus fairly presents the information called for in all material respects and has been prepared in accordance with the Commission's rules and guidelines applicable thereto.

(e) Conformity with EDGAR Filing. The Prospectus delivered to the Agent for use in connection with the sale of the Placement Shares pursuant to this Agreement will be identical to the versions of the Prospectus created to be transmitted to the Commission for filing via EDGAR, except to the extent permitted by Regulation S-T.

(f) Organization. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries (as defined below) are duly organized, validly existing as a corporation and in good standing under the laws of their respective jurisdictions of organization. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries are duly licensed or qualified as a foreign corporation for transaction of business and in good standing under the laws of each other jurisdiction in which their respective ownership or lease of property or the conduct of their respective businesses requires such license or qualification, and have all corporate power and authority necessary to own or hold their respective properties and to conduct their respective businesses as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, except where the failure to be so qualified or in good standing or have such power or authority would not, individually or in the aggregate, have a material adverse effect or would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on or affecting the business, properties, management, financial

condition, prospects, stockholders' equity or results of operations of the Company and the Subsidiaries taken as a whole, or prevent or materially interfere with consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby (a "**Material Adverse Effect**").

(g) **Subsidiaries.** The subsidiaries set forth on Schedule 4 (collectively, the "**Subsidiaries**"), are the Company's only significant subsidiaries (as such term is defined in Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X promulgated by the Commission). Except as set forth in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus, the Company owns, directly or indirectly, all of the equity interests of the Subsidiaries free and clear of any lien, charge, security interest, encumbrance, right of first refusal or other restriction, and all the equity interests of the Subsidiaries are validly issued and are fully paid, nonassessable and free of preemptive and similar rights. No Subsidiary is currently prohibited, directly or indirectly, from paying any dividends to the Company, from making any other distribution on such Subsidiary's capital stock, from repaying to the Company any loans or advances to such Subsidiary from the Company or from transferring any of such Subsidiary's property or assets to the Company or any other Subsidiary of the Company.

(h) **No Violation or Default.** Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is (i) in violation of its charter or by-laws or similar organizational documents; (ii) in default, and no event has occurred that, with notice or lapse of time or both, would constitute such a default, in the due performance or observance of any term, covenant or condition contained in any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement or other agreement or instrument to which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is a party or by which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is bound or to which any of the property or assets of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries are subject; or (iii) in violation of any law or statute or any judgment, order, rule or regulation of any Governmental Authority, except, in the case of each of clauses (ii) and (iii) above, for any such violation or default that would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. To the Company's knowledge, no other party under any material contract or other agreement to which it or any of its Subsidiaries is a party is in default in any respect thereunder where such default would have a Material Adverse Effect.

(i) **No Material Adverse Change.** Subsequent to the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses, if any (including any document deemed incorporated by reference therein), there has not been (i) any Material Adverse Effect or the occurrence of any development that the Company reasonably expects will result in a Material Adverse Effect, (ii) any transaction which is material to the Company and the Subsidiaries taken as a whole, (iii) any obligation or liability, direct or contingent (including any off-balance sheet obligations), incurred by the Company or any Subsidiary, which is material to the Company and the Subsidiaries taken as a whole, (iv) any material change in the capital stock (other than (A) the grant of additional stock, stock units and options under the Company's existing equity incentive plans, (B) changes in the number of outstanding Common Stock of the Company due to the issuance of shares upon the exercise or conversion of securities exercisable for, or convertible into, Common Stock outstanding on the date hereof, (C) as a result of the issuance of Placement Shares, (D) any repurchases of capital stock of the Company, or (E) otherwise publicly announced) or outstanding long-term indebtedness of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or (v) any dividend or distribution of any kind declared, paid or made on the capital stock of the Company or any Subsidiary, other than in

each case above in the ordinary course of business or as otherwise disclosed in the Registration Statement or Prospectus (including any document deemed incorporated by reference therein).

(j) Capitalization. The issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company have been validly issued, are fully paid and nonassessable and, other than as disclosed in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, are not subject to any preemptive rights, rights of first refusal or similar rights. The Company has an authorized, issued and outstanding capitalization as set forth in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as of the dates referred to therein (other than (i) the grant of additional stock, stock units and options under the Company's existing equity incentive plans, (ii) changes in the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock of the Company due to the issuance of shares upon the exercise or conversion of securities exercisable for, or convertible into, Common Stock outstanding on the date hereof, (iii) as a result of the issuance of the Placement Shares, or (iv) any repurchases of capital stock of the Company) and such authorized capital stock conforms to the description thereof set forth in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus. The description of the securities of the Company in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus is complete and accurate in all material respects. Except as disclosed in or contemplated by the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, as of the date referred to therein, the Company does not have outstanding any options to purchase, or any rights or warrants to subscribe for, or any securities or obligations convertible into, or exchangeable for, or any contracts or commitments to issue or sell, any shares of capital stock or other securities.

(k) Authorization; Enforceability. The Company has full legal right, power and authority to enter into this Agreement and perform the transactions contemplated hereby. This Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and is a legal, valid and binding agreement of the Company enforceable in accordance with its terms, except to the extent that (i) enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally and by general equitable principles and (ii) the indemnification and contribution provisions of Section 11 hereof may be limited by federal or state securities laws and public policy considerations in respect thereof.

(l) Authorization of Placement Shares. The Placement Shares, when issued and delivered pursuant to the terms approved by the Board or a duly authorized committee thereof, or a duly authorized executive officer, against payment therefor as provided herein, will be duly and validly authorized and issued and fully paid and nonassessable, free and clear of any pledge, lien, encumbrance, security interest or other claim (other than any pledge, lien, encumbrance, security interest or other claim arising from an act or omission of the Agent or a purchaser), including any statutory or contractual preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal or other similar rights, and will be registered pursuant to Section 12 of the Exchange Act. The Placement Shares, when issued, will conform in all material respects to the description thereof set forth in or incorporated into the Prospectus.

(m) No Consents Required. No consent, approval, authorization, order, registration or qualification of or with any Governmental Authority is required for the execution, delivery and performance by the Company of this Agreement, the issuance and sale by the Company of the Placement Shares as contemplated hereby, except for such consents, approvals, authorizations, orders and registrations or qualifications (i) as may be required under applicable state securities laws or by the by-laws and rules of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority



(“**FINRA**”) or the Exchange, including any notices that may be required by the Exchange, in connection with the sale of the Placement Shares by the Agent, (ii) as may be required under the Securities Act and (iii) as have been previously obtained by the Company.

(n) **No Preferential Rights.** Except as set forth in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, (i) no person, as such term is defined in Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X promulgated under the Securities Act (each, a “**Person**”), has the right, contractual or otherwise, to cause the Company to issue or sell to such Person any Common Stock or shares of any other capital stock or other securities of the Company (other than upon the exercise of options or warrants to purchase Common Stock or upon the exercise of options that may be granted from time to time under the Company’s stock option plan), (ii) no Person has any preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal, rights of co-sale, or any other rights (whether pursuant to a “poison pill” provision or otherwise) to purchase any Common Stock or shares of any other capital stock or other securities of the Company from the Company which have not been duly waived with respect to the offering contemplated hereby, (iii) no Person has the right to act as an underwriter or as a financial advisor to the Company in connection with the offer and sale of the Common Stock contemplated in this Agreement, and (iv) no Person has the right, contractual or otherwise, to require the Company to register under the Securities Act any Common Stock or shares of any other capital stock or other securities of the Company, or to include any such shares or other securities in the Registration Statement or the offering contemplated thereby, whether as a result of the filing or effectiveness of the Registration Statement or the sale of the Placement Shares as contemplated thereby or otherwise, except in each such case for such rights as have been waived on or prior to the date hereof.

(o) **Independent Public Accounting Firm.** BDO USA, LLP (the “**Accountant**”), whose report on the consolidated financial statements of the Company is filed with the Commission as part of the Company’s most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the Commission and incorporated by reference into the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, are and, during the periods covered by their report, were an independent registered public accounting firm within the meaning of the Securities Act and the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). To the Company’s knowledge, the Accountant is not in violation of the auditor independence requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the “**Sarbanes-Oxley Act**”) with respect to the Company.

(p) **Enforceability of Agreements.** All agreements between the Company and third parties expressly referenced in the Prospectus, other than such agreements that have expired by their terms or whose termination is disclosed in documents filed by the Company on EDGAR, are legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their respective terms, except to the extent that (i) enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or similar laws affecting creditors’ rights generally and by general equitable principles and (ii) the indemnification provisions of certain agreements may be limited by federal or state securities laws or public policy considerations in respect thereof, and except for any unenforceability that, individually or in the aggregate, would not have a Material Adverse Effect.

(q) **No Litigation.** Except as set forth in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, there are no actions, suits or proceedings by or before any Governmental Authority

pending, nor, to the Company's knowledge, any audits or investigations by or before any Governmental Authority to which the Company or a Subsidiary is a party or to which any property of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is the subject that, individually or in the aggregate, would have a Material Adverse Effect and, to the Company's knowledge, no such actions, suits, proceedings, audits or investigations are threatened or contemplated by any Governmental Authority or threatened by others; and (i) there are no current or pending audits or investigations, actions, suits or proceedings by or before any Governmental Authority that are required under the Securities Act to be described in the Prospectus that are not so described; and (ii) there are no contracts or other documents that are required under the Securities Act to be filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement that are not so filed.

(r) Consents and Permits. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, the Company and its Subsidiaries have made all filings, applications and submissions required by, possesses and is operating in compliance with, all approvals, licenses, certificates, certifications, clearances, consents, grants, exemptions, marks, notifications, orders, permits and other authorizations issued by, the appropriate federal, state or foreign Governmental Authority necessary for the ownership or lease of their respective properties or to conduct its businesses as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus (collectively, "Permits"), except for such Permits the failure of which to possess, obtain or make the same would not be reasonably expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; the Company and its Subsidiaries are in compliance with the terms and conditions of all such Permits, except where the failure to be in compliance would not be reasonably expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; all of the Permits are valid and in full force and effect, except where any invalidity, individually or in the aggregate, would not be reasonably expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; and neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has received any written notice relating to the limitation, revocation, cancellation, suspension, modification or non-renewal of any such Permit which, singly or in the aggregate, if the subject of an unfavorable decision, ruling or finding, would have a Material Adverse Effect, or has any reason to believe that any such license, certificate, permit or authorization will not be renewed in the ordinary course.

(s) Intellectual Property. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, the Company and its Subsidiaries own, possess, license or have other rights to use all foreign and domestic patents, patent applications, trade and service marks, trade and service mark registrations, trade names, copyrights, licenses, inventions, trade secrets, technology, Internet domain names, know-how and other intellectual property (collectively, the "Intellectual Property"), necessary for the conduct of their respective businesses as now conducted except to the extent that the failure to own, possess, license or otherwise hold adequate rights to use such Intellectual Property would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus (i) to the Company's knowledge, there are no rights of third parties to any such Intellectual Property owned by the Company and its Subsidiaries; (ii) to the Company's knowledge, there is no infringement by third parties of any such Intellectual Property; (iii) there is no pending or, to the Company's knowledge, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others challenging the Company's and its Subsidiaries' rights in or to any such Intellectual Property, and the Company is unaware of any facts which could form a reasonable basis for any such action, suit, proceeding or claim; (iv) there is no pending or, to the Company's knowledge, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others challenging the validity or scope of any such Intellectual Property;

(v) there is no pending or, to the Company's knowledge, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others that the Company and its Subsidiaries infringe or otherwise violate any patent, trademark, copyright, trade secret or other proprietary rights of others; (vi) to the Company's knowledge, there is no third-party U.S. patent or published U.S. patent application which contains claims for which an Interference Proceeding (as defined in 35 U.S.C. § 135) has been commenced against any patent or patent application described in the Prospectus as being owned by or licensed to the Company; and (vii) to the Company's knowledge, the Company and its Subsidiaries have complied with the terms of each agreement pursuant to which Intellectual Property has been licensed to the Company or such Subsidiary, and all such agreements are in full force and effect, except, in the case of any of clauses (i)-(vii) above, as would not, individually or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(t) Market Capitalization. At the time the Registration Statement was filed with the Commission, the Company met the then applicable requirements for the use of Form S-3 under the Securities Act, including, but not limited to, General Instruction I.B.1 of Form S-3. The Company is not a shell company (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act) and has not been a shell company for at least 12 calendar months previously and if it has been a shell company at any time previously, has filed current Form 10 information (as defined in Instruction I.B.6 of Form S-3) with the Commission at least 12 calendar months previously reflecting its status as an entity that is not a shell company.

(u) Certain Market Activities. Neither the Company, nor any of the Subsidiaries, nor, to the knowledge of the Company, any of their respective directors, officers or controlling persons has taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed, or that has constituted or would reasonably be expected to cause or result in, under the Exchange Act or otherwise, the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Placement Shares.

(v) Broker/Dealer Relationships. Neither the Company nor any of the Subsidiaries (i) is required to register as a "broker" or "dealer" in accordance with the provisions of the Exchange Act or (ii) directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, controls or is a "person associated with a member" or "associated person of a member" (within the meaning set forth in the FINRA Manual).

(w) No Reliance. The Company has not relied upon the Agent or legal counsel for the Agent for any legal, tax or accounting advice in connection with the offering and sale of the Placement Shares.

(x) Taxes. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries have filed all federal, state, local and foreign tax returns which have been required to be filed, or have properly requested extensions thereof, and paid all taxes shown thereon through the date hereof, to the extent that such taxes have become due and are not being contested in good faith, except where the failure to so file or pay would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. Except as otherwise disclosed in or contemplated by the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, no tax deficiency has been determined adversely to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries which has had, or would have, individually or in the aggregate, a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has no knowledge of any federal, state or other governmental tax deficiency, penalty or assessment

which has been or might be asserted or threatened against it which would reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(y) Title to Real and Personal Property. Except as set forth in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, the Company and its Subsidiaries have good and marketable title in fee simple to all items of real property owned by them, good and valid title to all personal property described in the Registration Statement or Prospectus as being owned by them that are material to the businesses of the Company and its Subsidiaries, in each case free and clear of all liens, encumbrances and claims, except those matters that (i) do not materially interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company and any of its Subsidiaries or (ii) would not reasonably be expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect. Any real or personal property described in the Registration Statement or Prospectus as being leased by the Company and any of its Subsidiaries is held by them under valid, existing and enforceable leases, except those that (A) do not materially interfere with the use made or proposed to be made of such property by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or (B) would not be reasonably expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(z) Environmental Laws. Except as set forth in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, the Company and its Subsidiaries (i) are in compliance with any and all applicable federal, state, local and foreign laws, rules, regulations, decisions and orders relating to the protection of human health and safety, the environment or hazardous or toxic substances or wastes, pollutants or contaminants (collectively, "**Environmental Laws**"); (ii) have received and are in compliance with all permits, licenses or other approvals required of them under applicable Environmental Laws to conduct their respective businesses as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus; and (iii) have not received notice of any actual or potential liability for the investigation or remediation of any disposal or release of hazardous or toxic substances or wastes, pollutants or contaminants, except, in the case of any of clauses (i), (ii) or (iii) above, for any such failure to comply or failure to receive required permits, licenses, other approvals or liability as would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(aa) Disclosure Controls. The Company maintains a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurance that (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorizations; (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and to maintain asset accountability; (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization; and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with the existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences. The Company's internal control over financial reporting is effective and the Company is not aware of any material weaknesses in its internal control over financial reporting (other than as set forth in the Prospectus). Since the date of the latest audited financial statements of the Company included in the Prospectus, there has been no change in the Company's internal control over financial reporting that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting (other than as set forth in the Prospectus). The Company has established disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15 and 15d-15) for the Company and designed such disclosure controls and procedures to ensure that material information relating

to the Company and each of its Subsidiaries is made known to the certifying officers by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K or Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, as the case may be, is being prepared. The Company's certifying officers have evaluated the effectiveness of the Company's disclosure controls and procedures as required by Rule 13a-15 of the Exchange Act.

(bb) Sarbanes-Oxley. There is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or, to the Company's knowledge, any of the Company's directors or officers, in their capacities as such, to comply in all material respects with any applicable provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, including Section 402 related to loans and Sections 302 and 906 related to certifications.

(cc) Finder's Fees. Neither the Company nor any of the Subsidiaries has incurred any liability for any finder's fees, brokerage commissions or similar payments in connection with the transactions herein contemplated, except as may otherwise exist with respect to Agent pursuant to this Agreement.

(dd) Labor Disputes. No labor disturbance by or dispute with employees of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries exists or, to the knowledge of the Company, is threatened which would result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(ee) Investment Company Act. Neither the Company nor any of the Subsidiaries is or, after giving effect to the offering and sale of the Placement Shares, will be required to register as an "investment company" or an entity "controlled" by an "investment company," as such terms are defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the "Investment Company Act").

(ff) Operations. The operations of the Company and its Subsidiaries are and have been conducted at all times in compliance with applicable financial recordkeeping and reporting requirements of the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act of 1970, as amended, applicable money laundering statutes of all jurisdictions to which the Company or its Subsidiaries are subject, and applicable rules and regulations thereunder (collectively, the "Money Laundering Laws"), and no action, suit or proceeding by or before any court or governmental agency, authority or body or any arbitrator involving the Company with respect to the Money Laundering Laws is pending, or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened.

(gg) Underwriter Agreements. Other than with respect to this Agreement or any other agreement with the Agent, the Company is not a party to any agreement with an agent or underwriter for any other "at the market" or continuous equity transaction for the Common Stock.

(hh) ERISA. To the knowledge of the Company, (i) each material employee benefit plan, within the meaning of Section 3(3) of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended ("ERISA"), that is maintained, administered or contributed to by the Company or any of its affiliates for employees or former employees of the Company and any of its Subsidiaries has been maintained in material compliance with its terms and the requirements of any applicable statutes, orders, rules and regulations, including but not limited to ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"); (ii) no prohibited transaction, within

the meaning of Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code, has occurred which would result in a material liability to the Company with respect to any such plan excluding transactions effected pursuant to a statutory or administrative exemption; and (iii) for each such plan that is subject to the funding rules of Section 412 of the Code or Section 302 of ERISA, no “accumulated funding deficiency” as defined in Section 412 of the Code has been incurred, whether or not waived, and the fair market value of the assets of each such plan (excluding for these purposes accrued but unpaid contributions) exceeds the present value of all benefits accrued under such plan determined using reasonable actuarial assumptions, other than, in the case of (i), (ii) and (iii) above, as would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(ii) Forward-Looking Statements. No forward-looking statement (within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act and Section 21E of the Exchange Act) (a “**Forward-Looking Statement**”) contained in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus has been made or reaffirmed without a reasonable basis or has been disclosed other than in good faith.

(jj) Agent Purchases. The Company acknowledges and agrees that the Agent has informed the Company that the Agent may, to the extent permitted under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, purchase and sell Common Stock for its own account while this Agreement is in effect, *provided*, that (i) no such purchase or sales shall take place while a Placement Notice is in effect (except to the extent the Agent may engage in sales of Placement Shares purchased or deemed purchased from the Company as a “riskless principal” or in a similar capacity) and (ii) the Company shall not be deemed to have authorized or consented to any such purchases or sales by the Agent.

(kk) Margin Rules. Neither the issuance, sale and delivery of the Placement Shares nor the application of the proceeds thereof by the Company as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus will violate Regulation T, U or X of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System or any other regulation of such Board of Governors.

(ll) Insurance. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries carry, or are covered by, insurance in such amounts and covering such risks as the Company and each of its Subsidiaries reasonably believe are adequate for the conduct of their respective businesses and the value of their respective properties. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries have no reason to believe that they will not be able to renew their existing insurance coverage as and when such coverage expires or to obtain similar coverage from similar insurers as may be necessary to continue its business at a cost that would not have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has not received written notice from any insurer, agent of such insurer or the broker of the Company that any material capital improvements or any other material expenditures (other than premium payments) are required or necessary to be made in order to continue such insurance.

(mm) No Improper Practices. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary, nor, to the Company’s knowledge, any director, officer or employee of the Company or any Subsidiary nor, to the Company’s knowledge, any agent, affiliate or other person acting on behalf of the Company or any Subsidiary has (i) violated or is in violation of any applicable provision of the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, or any other applicable anti-bribery or anti-corruption law (collectively, “**Anti-Corruption Laws**”), (ii) promised, offered, provided, attempted to provide or authorized the provision of anything of value, directly or indirectly, to any

person for the purpose of obtaining or retaining business, influencing any act or decision of the recipient, or securing any improper advantage in violation of any Anti-Corruption Laws; or (iii) made any payment of funds of the Company or any Subsidiary or received or retained any funds in violation of any Anti-Corruption Laws.

(nn) Status Under the Securities Act. The Company was not and is not an ineligible issuer as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act at the times specified in Rules 164 and 433 under the Securities Act in connection with the offering of the Placement Shares.

(oo) No Misstatement or Omission in an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus. Each Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, as of its issue date and as of each Applicable Time (as defined in Section 25 below), did not, does not and will not, through the completion of the Placement or Placements for which such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus is issued, include any information that conflicted, conflicts or will conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, including any Incorporated Document deemed to be a part thereof that has not been superseded or modified. The foregoing sentence does not apply to statements in or omissions from any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus based upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company by the Agent specifically for use therein.

(pp) No Conflicts. Neither the execution of this Agreement, nor the issuance, offering or sale of the Placement Shares, nor the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated herein and therein, nor the compliance by the Company with the terms and provisions hereof and thereof will conflict with, or will result in a breach of, any of the terms and provisions of, or has constituted or will constitute a default under, or has resulted in or will result in the creation or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any property or assets of the Company pursuant to the terms of any contract or other agreement to which the Company may be bound or to which any of the property or assets of the Company is subject, except (i) such conflicts, breaches or defaults as may have been waived and (ii) such conflicts, breaches and defaults that would not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; nor will such action result (x) in any violation of the provisions of the organizational or governing documents of the Company, or (y) in any material violation of the provisions of any statute or any order, rule or regulation applicable to the Company or of any Governmental Authority having jurisdiction over the Company.

(qq) Sanctions. (i) The Company represents that neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries (collectively, the “Entity”) or to the Company’s knowledge, any director, officer, employee, agent, affiliate or representative of the Entity, is a government, individual, or entity (in this paragraph (ss), “Person”) that is, or is owned or controlled by a Person that is:

(A) the subject of any sanctions administered or enforced by the U.S. Department of Treasury’s Office of Foreign Assets Control (“OFAC”), the United Nations Security Council, the European Union, Her Majesty’s Treasury, or other relevant sanctions authorities, including, without limitation, designation on OFAC’s Specially Designated Nationals and Blocked Persons List or OFAC’s Foreign Sanctions Evaders List (as amended, collectively, “Sanctions”), nor

(B) located, organized or resident in a country or territory that is the subject of Sanctions that broadly prohibit dealings with that country or territory (including, without limitation, Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Syria and the Crimea Region of the Ukraine (the “**Sanctioned Countries**”)).

(ii) The Entity represents and covenants that it will not, directly or indirectly, use the proceeds of the offering, or lend, contribute or otherwise make available such proceeds to any subsidiary, joint venture partner or other Person:

(A) to fund or facilitate any activities or business of or with any Person or in any country or territory that, at the time of such funding or facilitation, is the subject of Sanctions or is a Sanctioned Country, except as authorized under applicable Sanctions; or

(B) in any other manner that will result in a violation of Sanctions by any Person (including any Person participating in the offering, whether as underwriter, advisor, investor or otherwise).

(iii) The Entity represents and covenants that, except as detailed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, for the past 5 years, it has not engaged in, is not now engaging in, and will not engage in, any dealings or transactions with any Person, or in any country or territory, that at the time of the dealing or transaction is or was the subject of Sanctions prohibiting such dealing or transaction or is or was a Sanctioned Country.

(rr) Stock Transfer Taxes. On each Settlement Date, all stock transfer or other taxes (other than income taxes) which are required to be paid in connection with the sale and transfer of the Placement Shares to be sold hereunder will be, or will have been, fully paid or provided for by the Company and all laws imposing such taxes will be or will have been fully complied with by the Company in all material respects.

(ss) Compliance with Laws. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries are in material compliance with all applicable laws, regulations and statutes (including all environmental laws and regulations) in the jurisdictions in which it carries on business; the Company has not received a notice of non-compliance, nor knows of, nor has reasonable grounds to know of, any facts that could give rise to a notice of non-compliance with any such laws, regulations and statutes, and is not aware of any pending change or contemplated change to any applicable law or regulation or governmental position; in each case that would materially adversely affect the business of the Company or the business or legal environment under which the Company operates.

(tt) Statistical and Market-Related Data. The statistical and market-related data included in the Registration Statement and Prospectus are based on or derived from sources that the Company believes to be reliable and accurate (but has not independently verified) or represent the Company’s good faith estimates that are made on the basis of data derived from such sources.

(uu) Cybersecurity. (i)(x) There has been no material security breach or attack or other compromise of or relating to any of the Company’s and its subsidiaries’ information technology and computer systems, networks, hardware, software, data (including the data of their respective customers, employees, suppliers, vendors and any third party data maintained by or on



behalf of them), equipment or technology (“**IT Systems and Data**”), and (y) the Company and its subsidiaries have not been notified of, and have no knowledge of any event or condition that would reasonably be expected to result in any material security breach, attack or compromise to their IT Systems and Data, (ii) the Company and its subsidiaries have complied, and are presently in compliance with, in all material respects, all applicable laws, statutes or any judgment, order, rule or regulation of any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority and all industry guidelines, standards, internal policies and contractual obligations relating to the privacy and security of IT Systems and Data and to the protection of such IT Systems and Data from unauthorized use, access, misappropriation or modification and (iii) the Company and its subsidiaries have implemented backup and disaster recovery technology consistent with industry standards and practice.

(vv) Compliance with Data Privacy Laws. The Company and its Subsidiaries are, and at all prior times were, in material compliance with all applicable state and federal data privacy and security laws and regulations, including without limitation the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act (collectively, “**HIPAA**”) and the European Union General Data Protection Regulation (“**GDPR**”) (EU 2016/679) (collectively, the “**Privacy Laws**”). To ensure compliance with the Privacy Laws, the Company has in place, complies with, and takes appropriate steps to ensure compliance in all material respects with their policies and procedures relating to data privacy and security and the collection, storage, use, processing, disclosure, handling, and analysis of Personal Data (defined below) (the “**Policies**”). “Personal Data” means (i) a natural person’s name, street address, telephone number, e-mail address, photograph, social security number or tax identification number, driver’s license number, passport number, credit card number, bank information, or customer or account number; (ii) any information which would qualify as “personally identifying information” under the Federal Trade Commission Act, as amended; (iii) “personal data” as defined by GDPR; (iv) any information which would qualify as “protected health information” under HIPAA; and (v) any other piece of information that allows the identification of such natural person, or his or her family, or permits the collection or analysis of any data related to an identified person’s health or sexual orientation. The Company has at all times made all disclosures to users or customers required by applicable laws and regulatory rules or requirements, and none of such disclosures made or contained in any Policy have been inaccurate or in violation of any applicable laws and regulatory rules or requirements in any material respect. The Company further certifies that neither it nor any subsidiary: (i) has received notice of any actual or potential liability under or relating to, or actual or potential violation of, any of the Privacy Laws, and has no knowledge of any event or condition that would reasonably be expected to result in any such notice; (ii) is currently conducting or paying for, in whole or in part, any investigation, remediation, or other corrective action pursuant to any Privacy Law; or (iii) is a party to any order, decree, or agreement that imposes any obligation or liability under any Privacy Law.

(ww) Solvency. The Company is not as of the date hereof, and after giving effect to the offering and sale of the Placement Shares, will not be Insolvent (as defined below). For purposes of this Section 6(ww), “**Insolvent**” means, with respect to any person, (i) the present fair saleable value of such person’s assets is less than the amount required to pay such person’s total indebtedness, (ii) such person is unable to pay its debts and liabilities, subordinated, contingent or otherwise, as such debts and liabilities become absolute and matured, (iii) such person intends to

incur or believes that it will incur debts that would be beyond its ability to pay as such debts mature or (iv) such person has unreasonably small capital with which to conduct the business in which it is engaged as such business is now conducted and is proposed to be conducted.

Any certificate signed by an officer of the Company and delivered to the Agent or to counsel for the Agent pursuant to or in connection with this Agreement shall be deemed to be a representation and warranty by the Company, as applicable, to the Agent as to the matters set forth therein.

7. Covenants of the Company. The Company covenants and agrees with the Agent that:

(a) Registration Statement Amendments. After the date of this Agreement and during any period in which a Prospectus relating to any Placement Shares is required to be delivered by the Agent under the Securities Act (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act or similar rule), (i) the Company will notify the Agent promptly of the time when any subsequent amendment to the Registration Statement, other than documents incorporated by reference or amendments not related to any Placement, has been filed with the Commission and/or has become effective or any subsequent supplement to the Prospectus has been filed and of any request by the Commission for any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus related to the Placement or for additional information related to the Placement, (ii) the Company will prepare and file with the Commission, promptly upon the Agent's reasonable request, any amendments or supplements to the Registration Statement or Prospectus that, in the Agent's reasonable opinion, may be necessary or advisable in connection with the distribution of the Placement Shares by the Agent (*provided, however*, that the failure of the Agent to make such request shall not relieve the Company of any obligation or liability hereunder, or affect the Agent's right to rely on the representations and warranties made by the Company in this Agreement and *provided, further*, that the only remedy the Agent shall have with respect to the failure to make such filing shall be to cease making sales under this Agreement until such amendment or supplement is filed); (iii) the Company will not file any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares or a security convertible into the Placement Shares unless a copy thereof has been submitted to the Agent within a reasonable period of time before the filing and the Agent has not objected thereto (*provided, however*, that (A) the failure of the Agent to make such objection shall not relieve the Company of any obligation or liability hereunder, or affect the Agent's right to rely on the representations and warranties made by the Company in this Agreement and (B) the Company has no obligation to provide the Agent any advance copy of such filing or to provide the Agent an opportunity to object to such filing if the filing does not name the Agent or does not relate to the transaction herein provided; and *provided, further*, that the only remedy the Agent shall have with respect to the failure by the Company to obtain such consent shall be to cease making sales under this Agreement) and the Company will furnish to the Agent at the time of filing thereof a copy of any document that upon filing is deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Registration Statement or Prospectus, except for those documents available via EDGAR; and (iv) the Company will cause each amendment or supplement to the Prospectus to be filed with the Commission as required pursuant to the applicable paragraph of Rule 424(b) of the Securities Act or, in the case of any document to be incorporated therein by reference, to be filed with the Commission as required pursuant to the Exchange Act, within the time period prescribed (the determination to file or not file any amendment or supplement with the

Commission under this Section 7(a), based on the Company's reasonable opinion or reasonable objections, shall be made exclusively by the Company).

(b) Notice of Commission Stop Orders. The Company will advise the Agent, promptly after it receives notice or obtains knowledge thereof, of the issuance or threatened issuance by the Commission of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, of the suspension of the qualification of the Placement Shares for offering or sale in any jurisdiction, or of the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for any such purpose; and it will use its commercially reasonable efforts to prevent the issuance of any stop order or to obtain its withdrawal if such a stop order should be issued. The Company will advise the Agent promptly after it receives any request by the Commission for any amendments to the Registration Statement or any amendment or supplements to the Prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or for additional information related to the offering of the Placement Shares or for additional information related to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus.

(c) Delivery of Prospectus; Subsequent Changes. During any period in which a Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares is required to be delivered by the Agent under the Securities Act with respect to the offer and sale of the Placement Shares, (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act or similar rule), the Company will comply with all requirements imposed upon it by the Securities Act, as from time to time in force, and to file on or before their respective due dates all reports and any definitive proxy or information statements required to be filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14, 15(d) or any other provision of or under the Exchange Act. If the Company has omitted any information from the Registration Statement pursuant to Rule 430B under the Securities Act, it will use its commercially reasonable efforts to comply with the provisions of and make all requisite filings with the Commission pursuant to said Rule 430B and to notify the Agent promptly of all such filings if not available on EDGAR. If during such period any event occurs as a result of which the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances then existing, not misleading, or if during such period it is necessary to amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus to comply with the Securities Act, the Company will promptly notify the Agent to suspend the offering of Placement Shares during such period and the Company will promptly amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus (at the expense of the Company) so as to correct such statement or omission or effect such compliance; provided, however, that the Company may delay any such amendment or supplement if, in the reasonable judgment of the Company, it is in the interests of the Company to do so. Until such time as the Company shall have corrected such misstatement or omission or effected such compliance, the Company shall not notify the Agent to resume the offering of Placement Shares.

(d) Listing of Placement Shares. Prior to the date of the first Placement Notice, the Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts to cause the Placement Shares to be listed on the Exchange.

(e) Delivery of Registration Statement and Prospectus. The Company will furnish to the Agent and its counsel (at the reasonable expense of the Company) copies of the Registration Statement, the Prospectus (including all documents incorporated by reference therein)

and all amendments and supplements to the Registration Statement or Prospectus that are filed with the Commission during any period in which a Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares is required to be delivered under the Securities Act (including all documents filed with the Commission during such period that are deemed to be incorporated by reference therein), in each case as soon as reasonably practicable and in such quantities as the Agent may from time to time reasonably request and, at the Agent's request, will also furnish copies of the Prospectus to each exchange or market on which sales of the Placement Shares may be made; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be required to furnish any document (other than the Prospectus) to the Agent to the extent such document is available on EDGAR.

(f) Earning Statement. The Company will make generally available to its security holders as soon as practicable, but in any event not later than 15 months after the end of the Company's current fiscal quarter, an earning statement covering a 12-month period that satisfies the provisions of Section 11(a) and Rule 158 of the Securities Act; provided that the Company will be deemed to have furnished such statement to its security holders to the extent it is available on EDGAR.

(g) Use of Proceeds. The Company will use the Net Proceeds as described in the Prospectus in the section entitled "Use of Proceeds."

(h) Notice of Other Sales. Without the prior written consent of the Agent, the Company will not, directly or indirectly, offer to sell, sell, contract to sell, grant any option to sell or otherwise dispose of any Common Stock (other than the Placement Shares offered pursuant to this Agreement) or securities convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock, warrants or any rights to purchase or acquire, Common Stock during the period beginning on the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Trading Day immediately prior to the date on which any Placement Notice is delivered to the Agent hereunder and ending on the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Trading Day immediately following the final Settlement Date with respect to Placement Shares sold pursuant to such Placement Notice (or, if the Placement Notice has been terminated or suspended prior to the sale of all Placement Shares covered by a Placement Notice, the date of such suspension or termination); and will not directly or indirectly in any other "at the market" or continuous equity transaction offer to sell, sell, contract to sell, grant any option to sell or otherwise dispose of any Common Stock (other than the Placement Shares offered pursuant to this Agreement) or securities convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock, warrants or any rights to purchase or acquire, Common Stock prior to the sixtieth (60<sup>th</sup>) day immediately following the termination of this Agreement; *provided, however*, that such notice or restrictions will not be required in connection with the Company's issuance, grant or sale of (i) Common Stock, options or other equity awards to purchase or acquire Common Stock or Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of options or vesting of other equity awards, including any Common Stock sold on behalf of an employee to cover tax withholding obligations, pursuant to any employee or director stock option, equity incentive or benefits plan, stock ownership plan or dividend reinvestment plan (but not Common Stock subject to a waiver to exceed plan limits in its dividend reinvestment plan) of the Company, or issuable under any employment, consulting or other agreement between the Company and any director, officer, employee or consultant, whether now in effect or hereafter implemented, (ii) Common Stock issuable upon conversion of securities or the exercise of warrants, options or other rights in effect or outstanding, and disclosed in filings by the Company available on EDGAR or otherwise in writing to the Agent, (iii) Common Stock or securities convertible into or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock offered and sold in a

privately negotiated transaction to vendors or customers which are not issued for capital raising purposes, and (iv) Common Stock or securities convertible into or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock as consideration for mergers, acquisitions, sale or purchase of assets, other business combinations or research, collaboration, technology license, development, marketing or other similar agreements or strategic partnerships or alliances occurring after the date of this Agreement which are not issued for capital raising purposes.

(i) Change of Circumstances. The Company will, at any time during the pendency of a Placement Notice advise the Agent promptly after it shall have received notice or obtained knowledge thereof, of any information or fact that would alter or affect in any material respect any opinion, certificate, letter or other document required to be provided to the Agent pursuant to this Agreement.

(j) Due Diligence Cooperation. During the term of this Agreement, the Company will cooperate with any reasonable due diligence review conducted by the Agent or its representatives in connection with the transactions contemplated hereby, including, without limitation, providing information and making available documents and senior corporate officers, during regular business hours and at the Company's principal offices, as the Agent may reasonably request.

(k) Required Filings Relating to Placement of Placement Shares. The Company agrees that on such dates as the Securities Act shall require, with respect to the Placement Shares, the Company will (i) file a prospectus supplement with the Commission under the applicable paragraph of Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act (each and every filing date under Rule 424(b), a "Filing Date"), which prospectus supplement will set forth, within the relevant period, the amount of Placement Shares sold through the Agent, the Net Proceeds to the Company and the compensation payable by the Company to the Agent with respect to such Placement Shares (*provided* that the Company may satisfy its obligations under this Section 7(k) by making a filing in accordance with the Exchange Act including such information), and (ii) deliver such number of copies of each such prospectus supplement to each exchange or market on which such sales were effected as may be required by the rules or regulations of such exchange or market.

(l) Representation Dates; Certificate. (1) On or prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and (2) each time the Company:

(i) files the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares or amends or supplements (other than a prospectus supplement relating solely to an offering of securities other than the Placement Shares) the Registration Statement or the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares by means of a post-effective amendment, sticker, or supplement but not by means of incorporation of documents by reference into the Registration Statement or the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares;

(ii) files an annual report on Form 10-K under the Exchange Act (including any Form 10-K/A containing amended audited financial information or a material amendment to the previously filed Form 10-K);

(iii) files its quarterly reports on Form 10-Q under the Exchange Act; or

(iv) files a current report on Form 8-K containing amended financial information (other than information “furnished” pursuant to Items 2.02 or 7.01 of Form 8-K or to provide disclosure pursuant to Item 8.01 of Form 8-K relating to the reclassification of certain properties as discontinued operations in accordance with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 144) under the Exchange Act (each date of filing of one or more of the documents referred to in clauses (i) through (iv) shall be a “**Representation Date**”);

the Company shall furnish the Agent (but in the case of clause (iv) above only if the Agent reasonably determines that the information contained in such Form 8-K is material) with a certificate dated the Representation Date, in the form attached to this Agreement. The requirement to provide a certificate under this Section 7(l) shall be waived for any Representation Date occurring at a time (i) at which no Placement Notice is pending, or (ii) a Suspension is in effect, which waiver shall continue until the earlier to occur of the date the Company delivers a Placement Notice hereunder (which for such calendar quarter shall be considered a Representation Date) and the next occurring Representation Date on which the Company files its annual report on Form 10-K. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company subsequently decides to sell Placement Shares following a Representation Date when a Suspension was in effect and did not provide the Agent with a certificate under this Section 7(l), then before the Agent sells any Placement Shares, the Company shall provide the Agent with a certificate in conformity with this Section 7(l), dated as of the date of the Placement Notice.

(m) Company Counsel Legal Opinion. On or prior to the date of the first Placement Notice, the Company shall cause to be furnished to the Agent a written opinion and a negative assurance letter of Feder Kaszovitz LLP (“**Company Counsel**”), or other counsel reasonably satisfactory to the Agent, in form and substance satisfactory to the Agent and their counsel, substantially similar to the form previously provided to the Agent and their counsel, modified, as necessary, to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented. Thereafter, within five (5) Trading Days of each Representation Date with respect to which the Company is obligated to deliver a certificate pursuant to Section 7(l) for which no waiver is applicable, the Company shall cause to be furnished to the Agent a negative assurance letter of Company Counsel in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Agent; *provided, however*, the Company shall be required to furnish to Agent no more than one negative assurance letter hereunder per calendar quarter; *provided, further*, that in lieu of such negative assurance letters for subsequent periodic filings under the Exchange Act, counsel may furnish the Agent with a letter (a “**Company Counsel Reliance Letter**”) to the effect that the Agent may rely on the negative assurance letter previously delivered under this Section 7(m) to the same extent as if it were dated the date of such letter (except that statements in such prior letter shall be deemed to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as amended or supplemented as of the date of the Company Counsel Reliance Letter).

(n) Comfort Letter. (1) On or prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and (2) within five (5) Trading Days of each Representation Date with respect to which the Company is obligated to deliver a certificate pursuant to Section 7(l) for which no waiver is applicable (other than pursuant to Section 7(l)(iii)), and excluding the date of this Agreement, the Company shall cause its independent registered public accounting firm to furnish the Agent letters (the “**Comfort Letters**”), dated the date the Comfort Letter is delivered, which shall meet the requirements set forth in this Section 7(n). The Comfort Letter from the Company’s independent registered public

accounting firm shall be in a form and substance satisfactory to the Agent, (i) confirming that they are an independent registered public accounting firm within the meaning of the Securities Act and the PCAOB, (ii) stating, as of such date, the conclusions and findings of such firm with respect to the financial information and other matters ordinarily covered by accountants' "comfort letters" to underwriters in connection with registered public offerings (the first such letter, the "**Initial Comfort Letter**") and (iii) updating the Initial Comfort Letter with any information that would have been included in the Initial Comfort Letter had it been given on such date and modified as necessary to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, as amended and supplemented to the date of such letter.

(o) [Reserved.]

(p) Market Activities. The Company will not, directly or indirectly, (i) take any action designed to cause or result in, or that constitutes or would reasonably be expected to constitute, the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of Common Stock or (ii) sell, bid for, or purchase Common Stock in violation of Regulation M, or pay anyone any compensation for soliciting purchases of the Placement Shares other than the Agent.

(q) Investment Company Act. The Company will conduct its affairs in such a manner so as to reasonably ensure that neither it nor any of its Subsidiaries will be or become, at any time prior to the termination of this Agreement, required to register as an "investment company," as such term is defined in the Investment Company Act.

(r) No Offer to Sell. Other than an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus approved in advance by the Company and the Agent in its capacity as agent hereunder, neither the Agent nor the Company (including its agents and representatives, other than the Agent in its capacity as such) will make, use, prepare, authorize, approve or refer to any written communication (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act), required to be filed with the Commission, that constitutes an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy Placement Shares hereunder.

(s) Blue Sky and Other Qualifications. The Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts, in cooperation with the Agent, to qualify the Placement Shares for offering and sale, or to obtain an exemption for the Placement Shares to be offered and sold, under the applicable securities laws of such jurisdictions in the United States as the Agent may reasonably designate and to maintain such qualifications and exemptions in effect for so long as required for the distribution of the Placement Shares; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be obligated to file any general consent to service of process or to qualify as a foreign corporation or as a dealer in securities in any jurisdiction in which it is not so qualified or to subject itself to taxation in respect of doing business in any jurisdiction in which it is not otherwise so subject.

(t) Sarbanes-Oxley Act. The Company will maintain and keep accurate books and records reflecting its assets and maintain internal accounting controls in a manner designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and including those policies and procedures that (i) pertain to the maintenance of records that in reasonable detail accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets

of the Company, (ii) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit the preparation of the Company's consolidated financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, (iii) that receipts and expenditures of the Company are being made only in accordance with management's and the Company's directors' authorization, and (iv) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the Company's assets that could have a material effect on its financial statements. The Company will maintain such controls and other procedures, including, without limitation, those required by Sections 302 and 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, and the applicable regulations thereunder that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported, within the time periods specified in the Commission's rules and forms, including, without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to the Company's management, including its principal executive officer and principal financial officer, or persons performing similar functions, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure and to ensure that material information relating to the Company is made known to them by others within the Company, particularly during the period in which such periodic reports are being prepared.

(u) Secretary's Certificate; Further Documentation. Prior to the date of the first Placement Notice, the Company shall deliver to the Agent a certificate of the Secretary of the Company and attested to by an executive officer of the Company, dated as of such date, certifying as to (i) the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Company, (ii) the Amended and Restated By-laws of the Company, (iii) the resolutions of the Board of Directors of the Company authorizing the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the issuance of the Placement Shares and (iv) the incumbency of the officers duly authorized to execute this Agreement and the other documents contemplated by this Agreement. Within five (5) Trading Days of each Representation Date, the Company shall have furnished to the Agent such further information, certificates and documents as the Agent may reasonably request.

8. [Reserved.]

9. Payment of Expenses. The Company will pay all expenses incident to the performance of its obligations under this Agreement, including (i) the preparation and filing of the Registration Statement, including any fees required by the Commission, and the printing or electronic delivery of the Prospectus as originally filed and of each amendment and supplement thereto, in such number as the Agent shall deem necessary, (ii) the printing and delivery to the Agent of this Agreement and such other documents as may be required in connection with the offering, purchase, sale, issuance or delivery of the Placement Shares, (iii) the preparation, issuance and delivery of the certificates, if any, for the Placement Shares to the Agent, including any stock or other transfer taxes and any capital duties, stamp duties or other duties or taxes payable upon the sale, issuance or delivery of the Placement Shares to the Agent, (iv) the fees and disbursements of the counsel, accountants and other advisors to the Company, (v) the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees and expenses of the Agent including, but not limited to, the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees and expenses of the counsel to the Agent, payable within 10 days of the execution of this Agreement, in an amount not to exceed \$75,000.00 as of the date of this Agreement, plus an additional amount not to exceed \$5,000 per fiscal quarter on



an ongoing basis during the term of this Agreement, (vi) the qualification or exemption of the Placement Shares under state securities laws in accordance with the provisions of Section 7(r) hereof, including filing fees, but excluding fees of the Agent's counsel, (vii) the printing and delivery to the Agent of copies of any Permitted Issuer Free Writing Prospectus and the Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto in such number as the Agent shall deem necessary, (viii) the preparation, printing and delivery to the Agent of copies of the blue sky survey, (ix) the fees and expenses of the transfer agent and registrar for the Common Stock, (x) the filing and other fees incident to any review by FINRA of the terms of the sale of the Placement Shares including the fees of the Agent's counsel (subject to the cap, set forth in clause (v) above), and (xi) the fees and expenses incurred in connection with the listing of the Placement Shares on the Exchange.

10. Conditions to Agent's Obligations. The obligations of the Agent hereunder with respect to a Placement will be subject to the continuing accuracy and completeness of the representations and warranties made by the Company herein (other than those representations and warranties made as of a specified date or time), to the due performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder, to the completion by the Agent of a due diligence review satisfactory to it in its reasonable judgment, and to the continuing satisfaction (or waiver by the Agent in its sole discretion) of the following additional conditions:

(a) Registration Statement Effective. The Registration Statement shall remain effective and shall be available for the (i) resale of all Placement Shares issued to the Agent and not yet sold by the Agent and (ii) sale of all Placement Shares contemplated to be issued by any Placement Notice.

(b) No Material Notices. None of the following events shall have occurred and be continuing: (i) receipt by the Company of any request for additional information from the Commission or any other federal or state Governmental Authority during the period of effectiveness of the Registration Statement, the response to which would require any post-effective amendments or supplements to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus (other than immaterial amendments or supplements to documents incorporated by reference therein) if such post-effective amendments or supplements have not been made and become effective; (ii) the issuance by the Commission or any other federal or state Governmental Authority of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or receipt by the Company of notification of the initiation of any proceedings for that purpose; (iii) receipt by the Company of any notification with respect to the suspension of the qualification or exemption from qualification of any of the Placement Shares for sale in any jurisdiction or receipt by the Company of notification of the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose; or (iv) the occurrence of any event that makes any statement of a material fact made in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or any document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated therein by reference untrue or that requires the making of any changes in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or Incorporated Documents so that, in the case of the Registration Statement, it will not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading and, that in the case of the Prospectus, it will not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

(c) No Misstatement or Material Omission. The Agent shall not have advised the Company that the Registration Statement or Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, contains an untrue statement of fact that in the Agent's reasonable opinion, in consultation with outside counsel, is material, or omits to state a fact that in the Agent's reasonable opinion is material and is required to be stated therein or is necessary to make the statements therein not misleading.

(d) Material Changes. Except as contemplated in the Prospectus, or disclosed in the Company's reports filed with the Commission, there shall not have been any Material Adverse Effect or any development that would cause a Material Adverse Effect, or a downgrading in or withdrawal of the rating assigned to any of the Company's securities (other than asset backed securities) by any "nationally recognized statistical rating organization" as such term is defined by the Commission for purposes of Rule 436(g)(2) under the Securities Act Regulations (a "Rating Organization"), or a public announcement by any Rating Organization that it has under surveillance or review its rating of any of the Company's securities (other than asset backed securities), the effect of which, in the case of any such action by a Rating Organization described above, in the reasonable judgment of the Agent (without relieving the Company of any obligation or liability it may otherwise have), is so material as to make it impracticable or inadvisable to proceed with the offering of the Placement Shares on the terms and in the manner contemplated in the Prospectus.

(e) Company Counsel Legal Opinion. The Agent shall have received the opinion and negative assurance letter of Company Counsel required to be delivered pursuant to Section 7(m) on or before the date on which such delivery of such opinion and negative assurance letter are required pursuant to Section 7(m).

(f) Comfort Letter. The Agent shall have received the Comfort Letter required to be delivered pursuant to Section 7(n) on or before the date on which such delivery of such Comfort Letter is required pursuant to Section 7(n).

(g) Agent Counsel Legal Opinion. The Agent shall have received from Morgan, Lewis & Bockius, counsel for the Agent ("Agent Counsel"), an opinion and negative assurance letter of Agent Counsel, in form and substance satisfactory to the Agent, on or before each date on which the delivery of the opinion and negative assurance letter by the Company is required pursuant to Section 7(m), with respect to such matters as the Agent may reasonably require.

(h) Representation Certificate. The Agent shall have received the certificate required to be delivered pursuant to Section 7(l) on or before the date on which delivery of such certificate is required pursuant to Section 7(l).

(i) No Suspension. Trading in the Common Stock shall not have been suspended on the Exchange and the Common Stock shall not have been delisted from the Exchange.

(j) Other Materials. On each date on which the Company is required to deliver a certificate pursuant to Section 7(l), the Company shall have furnished to the Agent such

appropriate further information, opinions, certificates, letters and other documents as the Agent may reasonably request and which are usually and customarily furnished by an issuer of securities in connection with a securities offering of the type contemplated hereby. All such opinions, certificates, letters and other documents will be in compliance with the provisions hereof.

(k) Securities Act Filings Made. All filings with the Commission required by Rule 424 under the Securities Act to have been filed prior to the issuance of any Placement Notice hereunder shall have been made within the applicable time period prescribed for such filing by Rule 424.

(l) Approval for Listing. The Placement Shares shall either have been (i) approved for listing on the Exchange, subject only to notice of issuance, or (ii) the Company shall have filed an application for listing of the Placement Shares on the Exchange at, or prior to, the issuance of any Placement Notice and the Exchange shall have reviewed such application and not provided any objections thereto.

(m) FINRA. If applicable, FINRA shall have raised no objection to the terms of this offering and the amount of compensation allowable or payable to the Agent as described in the Prospectus.

(n) No Termination Event. There shall not have occurred any event that would permit the Agent to terminate this Agreement pursuant to Section 13(a).

#### 11. Indemnification and Contribution.

(a) Company Indemnification. The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Agent, its affiliates and its respective partners, members, directors, officers, employees and agents and each person, if any, who controls any Agent or any affiliate within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act as follows:

(i) against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever, as incurred, joint or several, arising out of or based upon any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), or the omission or alleged omission therefrom of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, or arising out of any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact included in any related Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto), or the omission or alleged omission therefrom of a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading;

(ii) against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever, as incurred, joint or several, to the extent of the aggregate amount paid in settlement of any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any Governmental Authority, commenced or threatened, or of any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue statement or omission, or any such alleged untrue statement or omission; *provided* that (subject to Section 11(d) below) any such settlement is effected with the written consent of the Company, which consent shall not unreasonably be delayed or withheld; and

(iii) against any and all expense whatsoever, as incurred (including the reasonable and documented fees and disbursements of counsel), reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any Governmental Authority, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue statement or omission, or any such alleged untrue statement or omission (whether or not a party), to the extent that any such expense is not paid under (i) or (ii) above,

*provided, however*, that this indemnity agreement shall not apply to any loss, liability, claim, damage or expense to the extent arising out of any untrue statement or omission or alleged untrue statement or omission made solely in reliance upon and in conformity with the Agent Information (as defined below).

(b) **Indemnification by the Agent.** The Agent agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company and its directors and each officer of the Company who signed the Registration Statement, and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense described in the indemnity contained in Section 11(a), as incurred, but only with respect to untrue statements or omissions, or alleged untrue statements or omissions, made in the Registration Statement (or any amendments thereto), the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) in reliance upon and in conformity with information relating to the Agent and furnished to the Company in writing by the Agent expressly for use therein. The Company hereby acknowledges that the only information that the Agent has furnished to the Company expressly for use in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) are the statements set forth in the ninth and tenth paragraphs under the caption “Plan of Distribution” in the Prospectus (the “**Agent Information**”).

(c) **Procedure.** Any party that proposes to assert the right to be indemnified under this Section 11 will, promptly after receipt of notice of commencement of any action against such party in respect of which a claim is to be made against an indemnifying party or parties under this Section 11, notify each such indemnifying party of the commencement of such action, enclosing a copy of all papers served, but the omission so to notify such indemnifying party will not relieve the indemnifying party from (i) any liability that it might have to any indemnified party otherwise than under this Section 11 and (ii) any liability that it may have to any indemnified party under the foregoing provisions of this Section 11 unless, and only to the extent that, such omission results in the forfeiture of substantive rights or defenses by the indemnifying party. If any such action is brought against any indemnified party and it notifies the indemnifying party of its commencement, the indemnifying party will be entitled to participate in and, to the extent that it elects by delivering written notice to the indemnified party promptly after receiving notice of the commencement of the action from the indemnified party, jointly with any other indemnifying party similarly notified, to assume the defense of the action, with counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party, and after notice from the indemnifying party to the indemnified party of its election to assume the defense, the indemnifying party will not be liable to the indemnified party for any other legal expenses except as provided below and except for the reasonable and documented costs of investigation subsequently incurred by the indemnified party in connection with the defense. The indemnified party will have the right to employ its own counsel in any such action, but the fees, expenses and other charges of such counsel will be at the expense of such

indemnified party unless (1) the employment of counsel by the indemnified party has been authorized in writing by the indemnifying party, (2) the indemnified party has reasonably concluded (based on advice of counsel) that there may be legal defenses available to it or other indemnified parties that are different from or in addition to those available to the indemnifying party, (3) a conflict or potential conflict exists (based on advice of counsel to the indemnified party) between the indemnified party and the indemnifying party (in which case the indemnifying party will not have the right to direct the defense of such action on behalf of the indemnified party) or (4) the indemnifying party has not in fact employed counsel to assume the defense of such action or counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party, in each case, within a reasonable time after receiving notice of the commencement of the action; in each of which cases the reasonable and documented fees, disbursements and other charges of counsel will be at the expense of the indemnifying party or parties. It is understood that the indemnifying party or parties shall not, in connection with any proceeding or related proceedings in the same jurisdiction, be liable for the reasonable and documented fees, disbursements and other charges of more than one separate firm (plus local counsel) admitted to practice in such jurisdiction at any one time for all such indemnified party or parties. All such fees, disbursements and other charges will be reimbursed by the indemnifying party after notice received by the indemnified person. An indemnifying party will not, in any event, be liable for any settlement of any action or claim effected without its written consent. No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of each indemnified party, settle or compromise or consent to the entry of any judgment in any pending or threatened claim, action or proceeding relating to the matters contemplated by this Section 11 (whether or not any indemnified party is a party thereto), unless such settlement, compromise or consent (1) includes an express and unconditional release of each indemnified party, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to such indemnified party, from all liability arising out of such litigation, investigation, proceeding or claim and (2) does not include a statement as to or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act by or on behalf of any indemnified party.

(d) Settlement Without Consent if Failure to Reimburse. If an indemnified party shall have requested an indemnifying party to reimburse the indemnified party for reasonable and documented fees and expenses of counsel, such indemnifying party agrees that it shall be liable for any settlement of the nature contemplated by Section 11(a)(ii) effected without its written consent if (1) such settlement is entered into more than 45 days after receipt by such indemnifying party of the aforesaid request, (2) such indemnifying party shall have received notice of the terms of such settlement at least 30 days prior to such settlement being entered into and (3) such indemnifying party shall not have reimbursed such indemnified party in accordance with such request prior to the date of such settlement.

(e) [Reserved.]

(f) Contribution. In order to provide for just and equitable contribution in circumstances in which the indemnification provided for in the foregoing paragraphs of this Section 11 is applicable in accordance with its terms but for any reason is held to be unavailable or insufficient from the Company or the Agent, the Company and the Agent will contribute to the total losses, claims, liabilities, expenses and damages (including any investigative, legal and other expenses reasonably incurred in connection with, and any amount paid in settlement of, any action, suit or proceeding or any claim asserted) to which the Company and the Agent may be subject in such proportion as shall be appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company on

the one hand and the Agent on the other hand. The relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and the Agent on the other hand shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as the total net proceeds from the sale of the Placement Shares (before deducting expenses) received by the Company bear to the total compensation received by the Agent from the sale of Placement Shares on behalf of the Company. If, but only if, the allocation provided by the foregoing sentence is not permitted by applicable law, the allocation of contribution shall be made in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to in the foregoing sentence but also the relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and the Agent, on the other hand, with respect to the statements or omission that resulted in such loss, claim, liability, expense or damage, or action in respect thereof, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations with respect to such offering. Such relative fault shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company or the Agent, the intent of the parties and their relative knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission. The Company and the Agent agree that it would not be just and equitable if contributions pursuant to this Section 11(f) were to be determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation that does not take into account the equitable considerations referred to herein. The amount paid or payable by an indemnified party as a result of the loss, claim, liability, expense, or damage, or action in respect thereof, referred to above in this Section 11(f) shall be deemed to include, for the purpose of this Section 11(f), any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such indemnified party in connection with investigating or defending any such action or claim to the extent consistent with Section 11(c) hereof. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 11(f), the Agent shall not be required to contribute any amount in excess of the commissions received by it under this Agreement and no person found guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) will be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation. For purposes of this Section 11(f), any person who controls a party to this Agreement within the meaning of the Securities Act, any affiliates of the Agent and any officers, directors, partners, employees or agents of the Agent or any of its affiliates, will have the same rights to contribution as that party, and each director of the Company and each officer of the Company who signed the Registration Statement will have the same rights to contribution as the Company, subject in each case to the provisions hereof. Any party entitled to contribution, promptly after receipt of notice of commencement of any action against such party in respect of which a claim for contribution may be made under this Section 11(f), will notify any such party or parties from whom contribution may be sought, but the omission to so notify will not relieve that party or parties from whom contribution may be sought from any other obligation it or they may have under this Section 11(f) except to the extent that the failure to so notify such other party materially prejudiced the substantive rights or defenses of the party from whom contribution is sought. Except for a settlement entered into pursuant to the last sentence of Section 11(c) hereof, no party will be liable for contribution with respect to any action or claim settled without its written consent if such consent is required pursuant to Section 11(c) hereof.

12. Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery. The indemnity and contribution agreements contained in Section 11 of this Agreement and all representations and warranties of the Company herein or in certificates delivered pursuant hereto shall survive, as of their respective dates, regardless of (i) any investigation made by or on behalf of the Agent, any controlling persons, or the Company (or any of their respective officers, directors, employees or

controlling persons), (ii) delivery and acceptance of the Placement Shares and payment therefor or (iii) any termination of this Agreement.

13. Termination.

(a) The Agent may terminate this Agreement, by notice to the Company, as hereinafter specified at any time (1) if there has been, since the time of execution of this Agreement or since the date as of which information is given in the Prospectus, any Material Adverse Effect, or any development that would reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect that, in the sole judgment of the Agent is material and adverse and makes it impractical or inadvisable to market the Placement Shares or to enforce contracts for the sale of the Placement Shares, (2) if there has occurred any material adverse change in the financial markets in the United States or the international financial markets, any outbreak of hostilities or escalation thereof or other calamity or crisis or any change or development involving a prospective change in national or international political, financial or economic conditions, in each case the effect of which is such as to make it, in the judgment of the Agent, impracticable or inadvisable to market the Placement Shares or to enforce contracts for the sale of the Placement Shares, (3) if trading in the Common Stock has been suspended or limited by the Commission or the Exchange, or if trading generally on the Exchange has been suspended or limited, or minimum prices for trading have been fixed on the Exchange, (4) if any suspension of trading of any securities of the Company on any exchange or in the over-the-counter market shall have occurred and be continuing, (5) if a major disruption of securities settlements or clearance services in the United States shall have occurred and be continuing, or (6) if a banking moratorium has been declared by either U.S. Federal or New York authorities. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 9 (Payment of Expenses), Section 11 (Indemnification and Contribution), Section 12 (Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery), Section 18 (Governing Law and Time; Waiver of Jury Trial) and Section 19 (Consent to Jurisdiction) hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination. If the Agent elects to terminate this Agreement as provided in this Section 13(a), the Agent shall provide the required notice as specified in Section 14 (Notices).

(b) The Company shall have the right, by giving five (5) days' notice as hereinafter specified to terminate this Agreement in its sole discretion at any time after the date of this Agreement. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 9, Section 11, Section 12, Section 18 and Section 19 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(c) The Agent shall have the right, by giving five (5) days' notice as hereinafter specified to terminate this Agreement in its sole discretion at any time after the date of this Agreement. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 9, Section 11, Section 12, Section 18 and Section 19 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(d) Unless earlier terminated pursuant to this Section 13, this Agreement shall automatically terminate upon the issuance and sale of all of the Placement Shares through the Agent on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth herein, except that the provisions of

Section 9, Section 11, Section 12, Section 18 and Section 19 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

(e) This Agreement shall remain in full force and effect unless terminated pursuant to Sections 13(a), (b), (c) or (d) above or otherwise by mutual agreement of the parties; *provided, however*, that any such termination by mutual agreement shall in all cases be deemed to provide that Section 9, Section 11, Section 12, Section 18 and Section 19 shall remain in full force and effect. Upon termination of this Agreement, the Company shall not have any liability to the Agent for any discount, commission or other compensation with respect to any Placement Shares not otherwise sold by the Agent under this Agreement.

(f) Any termination of this Agreement shall be effective on the date specified in such notice of termination; *provided, however*, that such termination shall not be effective until the close of business on the date of receipt of such notice by the Agent or the Company, as the case may be. If such termination shall occur prior to the Settlement Date for any sale of Placement Shares, such Placement Shares shall settle in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement.

14. Notices. All notices or other communications required or permitted to be given by any party to any other party pursuant to the terms of this Agreement shall be in writing, unless otherwise specified, and if sent to the Agent, shall be delivered to:

B. Riley Securities, Inc.  
299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor  
New York, New York 10171  
Attention: General Counsel  
Email: atmdesk@brileyfn.com

with a copy to:

Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP  
1400 Page Mill Road  
Palo Alto, CA 94304  
Attention: Albert Lung  
Email: albert.lung@morganlewis.com

and if to the Company, shall be delivered to:

JAKKS Pacific, Inc.  
2951 28th Street  
Santa Monica, CA 90405  
Attention: CFO  
Email: jkimble@jakks.net

with copies to:

Feder Kaszovitz LLP  
845 3rd Ave  
New York, NY 10022  
Attention: Geoffrey A. Bass  
Email: gbass@fedkas.com



Each party to this Agreement may change such address for notices by sending to the parties to this Agreement written notice of a new address for such purpose. Each such notice or other communication shall be deemed given (i) when delivered personally or by verifiable facsimile transmission (with an original to follow) on or before 4:30 p.m., New York City time, on a Business Day or, if such day is not a Business Day, on the next succeeding Business Day, (ii) on the next Business Day after timely delivery to a nationally-recognized overnight courier and (iii) on the Business Day actually received if deposited in the U.S. mail (certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid). For purposes of this Agreement, "**Business Day**" shall mean any day on which the Exchange and commercial banks in the City of New York are open for business.

An electronic communication ("**Electronic Notice**") shall be deemed written notice for purposes of this Section 14 if sent to the electronic mail address specified by the receiving party under separate cover. Electronic Notice shall be deemed received at the time the party sending Electronic Notice receives verification of receipt by the receiving party. Any party receiving Electronic Notice may request and shall be entitled to receive the notice on paper, in a nonelectronic form ("**Nonelectronic Notice**") which shall be sent to the requesting party within ten (10) days of receipt of the written request for Nonelectronic Notice.

15. Successors and Assigns. This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the Company and the Agent and their respective successors and the parties referred to in Section 11 hereof. References to any of the parties contained in this Agreement shall be deemed to include the successors and permitted assigns of such party. Nothing in this Agreement, express or implied, is intended to confer upon any party other than the parties hereto or their respective successors and permitted assigns any rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities under or by reason of this Agreement, except as expressly provided in this Agreement. Neither party may assign its rights or obligations under this Agreement without the prior written consent of the other party; *provided, however*, that the Agent may assign its rights and obligations hereunder to an affiliate thereof without obtaining the Company's consent.

16. Adjustments for Stock Splits. The parties acknowledge and agree that all share-related numbers contained in this Agreement shall be adjusted to take into account any stock split, stock dividend or similar event effected with respect to the Placement Shares.

17. Entire Agreement; Amendment; Severability; Waiver. This Agreement (including all schedules and exhibits attached hereto and Placement Notices issued pursuant hereto) constitutes the entire agreement and supersedes all other prior and contemporaneous agreements and undertakings, both written and oral, among the parties hereto with regard to the subject matter hereof. Neither this Agreement nor any term hereof may be amended except pursuant to a written instrument executed by the Company and the Agent. In the event that any one or more of the provisions contained herein, or the application thereof in any circumstance, is held invalid, illegal or unenforceable as written by a court of competent jurisdiction, then such provision shall be given full force and effect to the fullest possible extent that it is valid, legal and enforceable, and the

remainder of the terms and provisions herein shall be construed as if such invalid, illegal or unenforceable term or provision was not contained herein, but only to the extent that giving effect to such provision and the remainder of the terms and provisions hereof shall be in accordance with the intent of the parties as reflected in this Agreement. No implied waiver by a party shall arise in the absence of a waiver in writing signed by such party. No failure or delay in exercising any right, power, or privilege hereunder shall operate as a waiver thereof, nor shall any single or partial exercise thereof preclude any other or further exercise thereof or the exercise of any right, power, or privilege hereunder.

18. **GOVERNING LAW AND TIME; WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL.** THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK WITHOUT REGARD TO THE PRINCIPLES OF CONFLICTS OF LAWS. SPECIFIED TIMES OF DAY REFER TO NEW YORK CITY TIME. EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

19. **CONSENT TO JURISDICTION.** EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY SUBMITS TO THE EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION OF THE STATE AND FEDERAL COURTS SITTING IN THE CITY OF NEW YORK, BOROUGH OF MANHATTAN, FOR THE ADJUDICATION OF ANY DISPUTE HEREUNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH ANY TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY, AND HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, AND AGREES NOT TO ASSERT IN ANY SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING, ANY CLAIM THAT IT IS NOT PERSONALLY SUBJECT TO THE JURISDICTION OF ANY SUCH COURT, THAT SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING IS BROUGHT IN AN INCONVENIENT FORUM OR THAT THE VENUE OF SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING IS IMPROPER. EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES PERSONAL SERVICE OF PROCESS AND CONSENTS TO PROCESS BEING SERVED IN ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING BY MAILING A COPY THEREOF (CERTIFIED OR REGISTERED MAIL, RETURN RECEIPT REQUESTED) TO SUCH PARTY AT THE ADDRESS IN EFFECT FOR NOTICES TO IT UNDER THIS AGREEMENT AND AGREES THAT SUCH SERVICE SHALL CONSTITUTE GOOD AND SUFFICIENT SERVICE OF PROCESS AND NOTICE THEREOF. NOTHING CONTAINED HEREIN SHALL BE DEEMED TO LIMIT IN ANY WAY ANY RIGHT TO SERVE PROCESS IN ANY MANNER PERMITTED BY LAW.

20. **Counterparts.** This Agreement may be executed in two or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together shall constitute one and the same instrument. Delivery of an executed Agreement by one party to the other may be made by facsimile or electronic transmission.

21. **Construction.** The section and exhibit headings herein are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof. References herein to any law, statute, ordinance, code, regulation, rule or other requirement of any Governmental Authority shall be deemed to refer to such law, statute, ordinance, code, regulation, rule or other requirement of any Governmental

Authority as amended, reenacted, supplemented or superseded in whole or in part and in effect from time to time and also to all rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

22. Permitted Free Writing Prospectuses. The Company represents, warrants and agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Agent (which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed), and the Agent represents, warrants and agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Company, it has not made and will not make any offer relating to the Placement Shares that would constitute an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, or that would otherwise constitute a “free writing prospectus,” as defined in Rule 405, required to be filed with the Commission. Any such free writing prospectus consented to by the Agent or by the Company, as the case may be, is hereinafter referred to as a “Permitted Free Writing Prospectus.” The Company represents and warrants that it has treated and agrees that it will treat each Permitted Free Writing Prospectus as an “Issuer Free Writing Prospectus,” as defined in Rule 433, and has complied and will comply with the requirements of Rule 433 applicable to any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, including timely filing with the Commission where required, legending and record keeping. For the purposes of clarity, the parties hereto agree that all free writing prospectuses, if any, listed in Exhibit 23 hereto are Permitted Free Writing Prospectuses.

23. Absence of Fiduciary Relationship. The Company acknowledges and agrees that:

(a) the Agent is acting solely as agent in connection with the public offering of the Placement Shares and in connection with each transaction contemplated by this Agreement and the process leading to such transactions, and no fiduciary or advisory relationship between the Company or any of its respective affiliates, stockholders (or other equity holders), creditors or employees or any other party, on the one hand, and the Agent, on the other hand, has been or will be created in respect of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, irrespective of whether or not the Agent has advised or is advising the Company on other matters, and the Agent has no obligation to the Company with respect to the transactions contemplated by this Agreement except the obligations expressly set forth in this Agreement;

(b) it is capable of evaluating and understanding, and understands and accepts, the terms, risks and conditions of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement;

(c) the Agent has not provided any legal, accounting, regulatory or tax advice with respect to the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and it has consulted its own legal, accounting, regulatory and tax advisors to the extent it has deemed appropriate;

(d) it is aware that the Agent and its affiliates are engaged in a broad range of transactions which may involve interests that differ from those of the Company and the Agent and its affiliates have no obligation to disclose such interests and transactions to the Company by virtue of any fiduciary, advisory or agency relationship or otherwise; and

(e) it waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claims it may have against the Agent or its affiliates for breach of fiduciary duty or alleged breach of fiduciary duty in connection with the sale of Placement Shares under this Agreement and agrees that the Agent and its affiliates shall not have any liability (whether direct or indirect, in contract, tort or

otherwise) to it in respect of such a fiduciary duty claim or to any person asserting a fiduciary duty claim on its behalf or in right of it or the Company, employees or creditors of the Company.

24. **Definitions.** As used in this Agreement, the following terms have the respective meanings set forth below:

**“Applicable Time”** means (i) each Representation Date, (ii) the time of each sale of any Placement Shares pursuant to this Agreement and (iii) each Settlement Date.

**“Governmental Authority”** means (i) any federal, provincial, state, local, municipal, national or international government or governmental authority, regulatory or administrative agency, governmental commission, department, board, bureau, agency or instrumentality, court, tribunal, arbitrator or arbitral body (public or private); (ii) any self-regulatory organization; or (iii) any political subdivision of any of the foregoing.

**“Issuer Free Writing Prospectus”** means any “issuer free writing prospectus,” as defined in Rule 433, relating to the Placement Shares that (1) is required to be filed with the Commission by the Company, (2) is a “road show” that is a “written communication” within the meaning of Rule 433(d)(8)(i) whether or not required to be filed with the Commission, or (3) is exempt from filing pursuant to Rule 433(d)(5)(i) because it contains a description of the Placement Shares or of the offering that does not reflect the final terms, in each case in the form filed or required to be filed with the Commission or, if not required to be filed, in the form retained in the Company’s records pursuant to Rule 433(g) under the Securities Act Regulations.

**“Rule 164,” “Rule 172,” “Rule 405,” “Rule 415,” “Rule 424,” “Rule 424(b),” “Rule 430B,”** and **“Rule 433”** refer to such rules under the Securities Act Regulations.

All references in this Agreement to financial statements and schedules and other information that is “contained,” “included” or “stated” in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus (and all other references of like import) shall be deemed to mean and include all such financial statements and schedules and other information that is incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, as the case may be.

All references in this Agreement to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement to any of the foregoing shall be deemed to include the copy filed with the Commission pursuant to EDGAR; all references in this Agreement to any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus (other than any Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses that, pursuant to Rule 433, are not required to be filed with the Commission) shall be deemed to include the copy thereof filed with the Commission pursuant to EDGAR; and all references in this Agreement to “supplements” to the Prospectus shall include, without limitation, any supplements, “wrappers” or similar materials prepared in connection with any offering, sale or private placement of any Placement Shares by the Agent outside of the United States.

*[Signature Page Follows]*

If the foregoing correctly sets forth the understanding between the Company and the Agent, please so indicate in the space provided below for that purpose, whereupon this letter shall constitute a binding agreement between the Company and the Agent.

Very truly yours,

**JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

Accepted: As of the date first written above

**B. RILEY SECURITIES, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Patrice McNicoll

Title: Co-Head of Investment Banking

**JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.**

**INDENTURE**

Dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_

as Trustee

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<b>Page</b>
ARTICLE I. DEFINITIONS AND INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE	1
Section 1.1. Definitions	1
Section 1.2. Other Definitions	4
Section 1.3. Incorporation by Reference of Trust Indenture Act	4
Section 1.4. Rules of Construction	5
ARTICLE II. THE SECURITIES	5
Section 2.1. Issuable in Series	5
Section 2.2. Establishment of Terms of Series of Securities	6
Section 2.3. Execution and Authentication	8
Section 2.4. Registrar and Paying Agent	9
Section 2.5. Paying Agent to Hold Money in Trust	9
Section 2.6. Securityholder Lists	9
Section 2.7. Transfer and Exchange	9
Section 2.8. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	10
Section 2.9. Outstanding Securities	10
Section 2.10. Treasury Securities	11
Section 2.11. Temporary Securities	11
Section 2.12. Cancellation	11
Section 2.13. Defaulted Interest	11
Section 2.14. Special Record Dates	12
Section 2.15. Global Securities	12
Section 2.16. CUSIP Numbers	13
Section 2.17. Persons Deemed Owners	13
ARTICLE III. REDEMPTION	14
Section 3.1. Notice to Trustee	14
Section 3.2. Selection of Securities to be Redeemed	14
Section 3.3. Notice of Redemption	14
Section 3.4. Effect of Notice of Redemption	15
Section 3.5. Deposit of Redemption Price	15
Section 3.6. Securities Redeemed in Part	15
ARTICLE IV. COVENANTS	15
Section 4.1. Payment of Principal and Interest	15
Section 4.2. Additional Amounts	16
Section 4.3. Maintenance of Office or Agency	16
Section 4.4. SEC Reports	16
Section 4.5. Compliance Certificate	17
Section 4.6. Taxes	17
Section 4.7. Stay, Extension and Usury Laws	17
Section 4.8. Corporate Existence	18
ARTICLE V. SUCCESSORS	18
Section 5.1. Merger, Consolidation, or Sale of Assets	18
Section 5.2. Successor Person Substituted	18



	<u>Page</u>
ARTICLE VI. DEFAULTS AND REMEDIES	19
Section 6.1. Events of Default	19
Section 6.2. Acceleration	20
Section 6.3. Other Remedies	20
Section 6.4. Waiver of Past Defaults	21
Section 6.5. Control by Majority	21
Section 6.6. Limitation on Suits	21
Section 6.7. Rights of Holders of Securities to Receive Payment	21
Section 6.8. Collection Suit by Trustee	22
Section 6.9. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	22
Section 6.10. Priorities	22
Section 6.11. Undertaking for Costs	22
ARTICLE VII. TRUSTEE	23
Section 7.1. Duties of Trustee	23
Section 7.2. Rights of Trustee	24
Section 7.3. Individual Rights of Trustee	25
Section 7.4. Trustee's Disclaimer	25
Section 7.5. Notice of Defaults	25
Section 7.6. Reports by Trustee to Holders	25
Section 7.7. Compensation and Indemnity	25
Section 7.8. Replacement of Trustee	26
Section 7.9. Successor Trustee by Merger, etc.	27
Section 7.10. Eligibility; Disqualification	27
Section 7.11. Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company	27
ARTICLE VIII. LEGAL DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE	27
Section 8.1. Option to Effect Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	27
Section 8.2. Legal Defeasance and Discharge	27
Section 8.3. Covenant Defeasance	28
Section 8.4. Conditions to Legal or Covenant Defeasance	28
Section 8.5. Deposited Money and Government Securities to be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions	29
Section 8.6. Repayment to Company	30
Section 8.7. Reinstatement	30
ARTICLE IX. AMENDMENTS AND WAIVERS	30
Section 9.1. Without Consent of Holders	30
Section 9.2. With Consent of Holders	31
Section 9.3. Limitations	32
Section 9.4. Compliance with Trust Indenture Act	32
Section 9.5. Revocation and Effect of Consents	32
Section 9.6. Notation on or Exchange of Securities	33
Section 9.7. Trustee Protected	33
ARTICLE X. GUARANTEES	33
Section 10.1. Guarantees	33

	<b>Page</b>
ARTICLE XI. SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	33
Section 11.1. Satisfaction and Discharge	33
Section 11.2. Application of Trust Money	34
ARTICLE XII. MISCELLANEOUS	35
Section 12.1. Trust Indenture Act Controls	35
Section 12.2. Notices	35
Section 12.3. Communication by Holders with Other Holders	36
Section 12.4. Certificate and Opinion as to Conditions Precedent	36
Section 12.5. Statements Required in Certificate or Opinion	37
Section 12.6. Rules by Trustee and Agents	37
Section 12.7. Legal Holidays	37
Section 12.8. No Recourse Against Others	37
Section 12.9. Counterparts	37
Section 12.10. Governing Law; Waiver of Trial by Jury	37
Section 12.11. No Adverse Interpretation of Other Agreements	38
Section 12.12. Successors	38
Section 12.13. Severability	38
Section 12.14. Table of Contents, Headings, Etc.	38
Section 12.15. Securities in a Foreign Currency	38
ARTICLE XIII. SINKING FUNDS	39
Section 13.1. Applicability of Article	39
Section 13.2. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	39
Section 13.3. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	39

**JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.**

Reconciliation and tie between Trust Indenture Act of 1939 and the Indenture

§310(a)(1)	7.10
(a)(2)	7.10
(a)(3)	Not Applicable
(a)(4)	Not Applicable
(a)(5)	7.10
(b)	7.10
(c)	Not Applicable
§311(a)	7.11
(b)	7.11
(c)	Not Applicable
§312(a)	2.6
(b)	12.3
(c)	12.3
§313(a)	7.6
(b)(1)	Not Applicable
(b)(2)	Not Applicable
(c)(1)	7.6
(c)(2)	7.6
(c)(3)	Not Applicable
(d)	7.6
§314(a)	4.4, 4.5
(b)	Not Applicable
(c)(1)	12.4
(c)(2)	12.4
(c)(3)	Not Applicable
(d)	Not Applicable
(e)	12.5
(f)	Not Applicable
§315(a)	7.1
(b)	7.5
(c)	7.1
(d)	7.1
(e)	6.11
§316(a)	2.10
(a)(1)(A)	6.5
(a)(1)(B)	6.4
(b)	6.7
(c)	2.14, 9.5(d)
§317(a)(1)	6.8
(a)(2)	6.9
(b)	2.5
§318(a)	12.1

Note: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be part of the Indenture.

INDENTURE

Indenture dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ between JAKKS Pacific, Inc., a Delaware corporation (“Company”), and \_\_\_\_\_, as trustee (“Trustee”).

Each party agrees as follows for the benefit of the other party and for the equal and ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities (or applicable Series thereof) issued under this Indenture.

ARTICLE I.  
DEFINITIONS AND INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

Section 1.1. Definitions.

“Additional Amounts” means any additional amounts which are required hereby or by any Security, under circumstances specified herein or therein, to be paid by the Company in respect of certain taxes imposed on Holders specified herein or therein and which are owing to such Holders.

“Affiliate” of any specified person means any other person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” (including, with correlative meanings, the terms “controlled by” and “under common control with”), as used with respect to any person, shall mean the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management or policies of such person, whether through the ownership of voting securities or by agreement or otherwise.

“Agent” means any Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent.

“Authorized Newspaper” means a newspaper in an official language of the country of publication customarily published at least once a day for at least five days in each calendar week and of general circulation in the place in connection with which the term is used. If it shall be impractical in the opinion of the Trustee to make any publication of any notice required hereby in an Authorized Newspaper, any publication or other notice in lieu thereof that is made or given by the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient publication of such notice.

“Bearer” means anyone in possession from time to time of a Bearer Security.

“Bearer Security” means any Security, including any interest coupon appertaining thereto, that does not provide for the identification of the Holder thereof.

“Board of Directors” means the Board of Directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee thereof.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been adopted by the Board of Directors or pursuant to authorization by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of the certificate and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” means, unless otherwise provided by Board Resolution, Officers’ Certificate or supplemental indenture hereto for a particular Series, any day except a Saturday, Sunday or a legal holiday in The City of New York or in the city where the Corporate Trust Office is located on which banking institutions are authorized or required by law, regulation or executive order to close.

“Capital Stock” means:

(1) in the case of a corporation, corporate stock;

(2) in the case of an association or business entity, any and all shares, interests, participations, rights or other equivalents (however designated) of corporate stock;

(3) in the case of a partnership or limited liability company, partnership interests (whether general or limited) or membership interests; and

(4) any other interest or participation that confers on a person the right to receive a share of the profits and losses of, or distributions of assets of, the issuing person, but excluding from all of the foregoing any debt securities convertible into Capital Stock, whether or not such debt securities include any right of participation with Capital Stock.

“Company” means the party named as such above until a successor replaces it pursuant to Article V hereof and thereafter means the successor.

“Company Order” means a written order signed in the name of the Company by two Officers of the Company.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business shall be principally administered.

“Default” means any event that is, or after notice or passage of time or both would be, an Event of Default.

“Depository” means, with respect to the Securities of any Series issuable or issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, the person designated as Depository for such Series by the Company, which Depository shall be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act; and if at any time there is more than one such person, “Depository” as used with respect to the Securities of any Series shall mean the Depository with respect to the Securities of such Series.

“Discount Security” means any Security that provides for an amount less than the stated principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.2.

“Dollars” and “\$” means the currency of The United States of America.

“Equity Interests” means Capital Stock and all warrants, options or other rights to acquire Capital Stock (but excluding any debt security that is convertible into, or exchangeable for, Capital Stock).

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“Foreign Currency” means any currency or currency unit issued by a government other than the government of The United States of America.

“GAAP” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to Securities of a particular Series, generally accepted accounting principles in the United States, which are in effect as of the time when and for the period as to which such accounting principles are to be applied.

“Global Security” or “Global Securities” means a Security or Securities, as the case may be, in the form established pursuant to Section 2.2 evidencing all or part of a Series of Securities, issued to the Depository for such Series or its nominee, and registered in the name of such Depository or nominee.

“Government Securities” means direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed by, the United States of America, and the payment for which the United States pledges its full faith and credit.

“Guarantor” means any person that issues a guarantee of the Securities, either on the Issue Date or after the Issue Date in accordance with the terms of this Indenture; provided, that upon the release and discharge of such person from its guarantee in accordance with this Indenture, such person shall cease to be a Guarantor.

“Holder” or “Securityholder” means a person in whose name a Security is registered or the holder of a Bearer Security.

“Indenture” means this Indenture as amended or supplemented from time to time and shall include the form and terms of particular Series of Securities established as contemplated hereunder.

“interest” when used with respect to any Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

“Issue Date” means with respect to any Series of Securities the first date such Securities are issued under this Indenture.

“Lien” means any mortgage, pledge, security interest, encumbrance, lien or charge of any kind (including, without limitation, any conditional sale or other title retention agreement or lease in the nature thereof or any agreement to give any security interest).

“Maturity” when used with respect to any Security or installment of principal thereof, means the date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption, notice of option to elect repayment or otherwise.

“Officer” means the Chief Executive Officer, the Chief Financial Officer, the President, any Executive Vice-President, the Treasurer, the Secretary, any Assistant Treasurer or any Assistant Secretary of the Company.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by two Officers, one of whom (in the case of an Officers’ Certificate delivered under Section 4.5 hereof) must be the Company’s principal executive officer, the principal financial officer or the principal accounting officer.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of legal counsel who is reasonably acceptable to the Trustee. The counsel may be an employee of or counsel to the Company.

“person” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, association, limited liability company, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or other entity or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“principal” of a Security means the principal of the Security plus, when appropriate, the premium, if any, on, and any Additional Amounts in respect of, the Security.

“Responsible Officer” means, when used with respect to the Trustee, any officer within the corporate trust department of the Trustee, including any vice president, assistant vice president, assistant treasurer, trust officer or any other officer of the Trustee who customarily performs functions similar to those performed by the persons who at the time shall be such officers, respectively, or to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of such person’s knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject and who shall have direct responsibility or be part of the group that has such responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

“SEC” means the Securities and Exchange Commission or any successor agency.

“Securities” means the debentures, notes or other debt instruments of the Company of any Series authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“Series” or “Series of Securities” means each series of debentures, notes or other debt instruments of the Company created pursuant to Sections 2.1 and 2.2 hereof.

“Stated Maturity” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“Subsidiary” of any specified person means any corporation, association or other business entity of which more than 50% of the total voting power of shares of Capital Stock entitled (without regard to the occurrence of any contingency) to vote in the election of directors, managers or trustees thereof is at the time owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by such person or one or more of the other Subsidiaries of that person or a combination thereof.

“TIA” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (15 U.S. Code §§ 77aaa-77bbb) as in effect on the date of this Indenture; provided, however, that in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “TIA” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act as so amended.

“Trustee” means the person named as the “Trustee” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean each person who is then a Trustee hereunder, and if at any time there is more than one such person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any Series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that Series.

Section 1.2. Other Definitions.

<b>TERM</b>	<b>DEFINED IN SECTION</b>
“Bankruptcy Law”	6.1
“Covenant Defeasance”	8.3
“Custodian”	6.1
“Depository Entity”	9.5
“Event of Default”	6.1
“Legal Defeasance”	8.2
“Legal Holiday”	12.7
“mandatory sinking fund payment”	13.1
“Market Exchange Rate”	12.15
“optional sinking fund payment”	13.1
“Paying Agent”	2.4
“Registrar”	2.4
“Service Agent”	2.4

Section 1.3. Incorporation by Reference of Trust Indenture Act.

Whenever this Indenture refers to a provision of the TIA, the provision is incorporated by reference in and made a part of this Indenture. The following TIA terms used in this Indenture have the following meanings:

“Commission” means the SEC.

“indenture securities” means the Securities.

“indenture security holder” means a Securityholder.

“indenture to be qualified” means this Indenture.

“indenture trustee” or “institutional trustee” means the Trustee.

“obligor” on the indenture securities means the Company, any successor obligor upon the Securities or a Guarantor.

All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined by the TIA, defined by TIA reference to another statute or defined by SEC rule under the TIA and not otherwise defined herein are used herein as so defined.

Section 1.4. Rules of Construction.

Unless the context otherwise requires:

- (a) a term has the meaning assigned to it;
- (b) an accounting term not otherwise defined has the meaning assigned to it in accordance with GAAP;
- (c) “or” is not exclusive;
- (d) “will” shall be interpreted to express a command;
- (e) words in the singular include the plural, and in the plural include the singular;
- (f) provisions apply to successive events and transactions; and
- (g) references to sections of or rules under the Securities Act will be deemed to include substitute, replacement of successor sections or rules adopted by the SEC from time to time.

ARTICLE II.  
THE SECURITIES

Section 2.1. Issuable in Series.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more Series. All Securities of a Series shall be identical except as may be set forth in a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture or an Officers’ Certificate detailing the adoption of the terms thereof pursuant to the authority granted under a Board Resolution. In the case of Securities of a Series to be issued from time to time, the Board Resolution, Officers’ Certificate or supplemental indenture detailing the adoption of the terms thereof pursuant to authority granted under a Board Resolution may provide for the method by which specified terms (such as interest rate, maturity date, record date or date from which interest shall accrue) are to be determined. Securities may differ between Series in respect of any matters, provided that all Series of Securities shall be equally and ratably entitled to the benefits of the Indenture.



Section 2.2. Establishment of Terms of Series of Securities.

At or prior to the issuance of any Securities within a Series, the following shall be established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth or determined in the manner provided in a Board Resolution or in a supplemental indenture or in an Officers' Certificate pursuant to authority granted under a Board Resolution:

- (a) the title of the Series (which shall distinguish the Securities of that particular Series from the Securities of any other Series);
- (b) the price or prices (expressed as a percentage of the principal amount thereof) at which the Securities of the Series will be issued;
- (c) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the Series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the Series pursuant to Section 2.7, 2.8, 2.11, 3.6 or 9.6);
- (d) whether the Securities rank as senior Securities, senior subordinated Securities or subordinated Securities or any combination thereof and the terms of any such subordination;
- (e) the form and terms of any guarantee of any Securities of the series;
- (f) the terms and conditions, if any, upon which the Securities of the series shall be exchanged for or converted into other securities of the Company or securities of another person;
- (g) the provisions, if any, relating to any security provided for the Securities of the Series;
- (h) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the Series is payable;

(i) the rate or rates (which may be fixed or variable) per annum or, if applicable, the method used to determine such rate or rates (including, but not limited to, any currency exchange rate, commodity index, stock exchange index or financial index) at which the Securities of the Series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which such interest, if any, shall accrue, or the method for determining the date or dates from which interest will accrue, the date or dates on which such interest, if any, shall commence and be payable and any regular record date for the interest payable on any interest payment date;

(j) the manner in which the amounts of payment of principal of or interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series will be determined, if such amounts may be determined by reference to an index based on a currency or currencies or by reference to a currency exchange rate, commodity, commodity index, stock exchange index or financial index;

(k) if other than the Corporate Trust Office, the place or places where the principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series shall be payable, where the Securities of such Series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of such Series and this Indenture may be served, and the method of such payment, if by wire transfer, mail or other means;

(l) if applicable, the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which the Securities of the Series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;

(m) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase the Securities of the Series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of a Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the Series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(n) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple of \$1,000 in excess thereof, the denominations in which the Securities of the Series shall be issuable;

(o) the forms of the Securities of the Series in bearer or fully registered form (and, if in fully registered form, whether the Securities of the Series shall be issued in whole or in part in the form of a Global Security or Securities, and the terms and conditions, if any, upon which such Global Security or Securities may be exchanged in whole or in part for other individual Securities);

(p) any depositories, interest rate calculation agents, exchange rate calculation agents or other agents with respect to Securities of such Series if other than those appointed herein;

(q) the Trustee for the series of Securities, if other than the Trustee named on the first page hereof or its successors;

(r) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of the Securities of the Series that shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.2;

(s) any addition to or change in the covenants set forth in Articles IV or V which applies to Securities of the Series;

(t) any addition to or change in the Events of Default which applies to any Securities of the Series and any change in the right of the Trustee or the requisite Holders of such Securities to declare the principal amount thereof due and payable pursuant to Section 6.2;

(u) if other than Dollars, the currency of denomination of the Securities of the Series, which may be any Foreign Currency, and if such currency of denomination is a composite currency, the agency or organization, if any, responsible for overseeing such composite currency;

(v) if other than Dollars, the designation of the currency, currencies or currency units in which payment of the principal of and interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series will be made;

(w) if payments of principal of or interest, if any, on the Securities of the Series are to be made in one or more currencies or currency units other than that or those in which such Securities are denominated, the manner in which the exchange rate with respect to such payments will be determined;

(x) the securities exchange(s) on which the Securities of the Series will be listed, if any;

(y) additions or deletions to or changes in the provisions relating to covenant defeasance and legal defeasance;

(z) additions or deletions to or changes in the provisions relating to satisfaction and discharge of the Indenture;

(aa) additions or deletions to or changes in the provisions relating to the modification of the Indenture both with and without the consent of holders of Securities of the Series issued under the Indenture; and

(bb) any other terms of the Securities of the Series (which terms may modify, supplement or delete any provision of this Indenture with respect to such Series; provided, however, that no such term may modify or delete any provision hereof if imposed by the TIA; and provided, further, that any modification or deletion of the rights, duties or immunities of the Trustee hereunder shall have been consented to in writing by the Trustee).

All Securities of any one Series need not be issued at the same time and may be issued from time to time, consistent with the terms of this Indenture, if so provided by or pursuant to the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate referred to above, and the authorized principal amount of any Series may be increased to provide for issuances of additional Securities of such Series, unless otherwise provided in such Board Resolution, supplemental indenture or Officers' Certificate.

### Section 2.3. Execution and Authentication.

Two Officers shall sign the Securities for the Company by manual or facsimile signature.

If an Officer whose signature is on a Security no longer holds that office at the time the Security is authenticated, the Security shall nevertheless be valid.

A Security shall not be valid until authenticated by the manual signature of the Trustee or an authenticating agent. The signature shall be conclusive evidence that the Security has been authenticated under this Indenture.

The Trustee shall at any time, and from time to time, authenticate Securities for original issue in the principal amount provided in the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate, upon receipt by the Trustee of a Company Order. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication unless otherwise provided by a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate. The aggregate principal amount of Securities of any Series outstanding at any time may not exceed any limit upon the maximum principal amount for such Series set forth in the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate delivered pursuant to Section 2.2, except as provided in Section 2.9.

Prior to the issuance of Securities of any Series, the Trustee shall have received and (subject to Section 7.2) shall be fully protected in relying on: (a) the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture hereto or Officers' Certificate establishing the form of the Securities of that Series or of Securities within that Series and the terms of the Securities of that Series or of Securities within that Series, (b) an Officers' Certificate complying with Section 12.4, and (c) an Opinion of Counsel complying with Section 12.4.

The Trustee shall have the right to decline to authenticate and deliver any Securities of such Series: (a) if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that such action may not be taken lawfully; or (b) if the Trustee in good faith by its board of directors or trustees, executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or vice-presidents shall determine that such action would expose the Trustee to personal liability to Holders of any then outstanding Series of Securities.

The Trustee may appoint an authenticating agent acceptable to the Company to authenticate Securities. An authenticating agent may authenticate Securities whenever the Trustee may do so. Each reference in this Indenture to authentication by the Trustee includes authentication by such agent. An authenticating agent has the same rights as an Agent to deal with the Company or an Affiliate of the Company.

#### Section 2.4. Registrar and Paying Agent.

The Company shall maintain, with respect to each Series of Securities, at the place or places specified with respect to such Series pursuant to Section 2.2, an office or agency where Securities of such Series may be presented or surrendered for payment (“Paying Agent”), where Securities of such Series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange (“Registrar”) and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of such Series and this Indenture may be served (“Service Agent”). The Registrar shall keep a register with respect to each Series of Securities and to their transfer and exchange. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the name and address, and any change in the name or address, of each Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the name and address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more co-registrars, additional paying agents or additional service agents and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligations to maintain a Registrar, Paying Agent and Service Agent in each place so specified pursuant to Section 2.2 for Securities of any Series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the name or address of any such co-registrar, additional paying agent or additional service agent. The term “Registrar” includes any co-registrar; the term “Paying Agent” includes any additional paying agent; and the term “Service Agent” includes any additional service agent.

The Company hereby appoints the Trustee the initial Registrar, Paying Agent and Service Agent for each Series unless another Registrar, Paying Agent or Service Agent, as the case may be, is appointed prior to the time Securities of that Series are first issued.

#### Section 2.5. Paying Agent to Hold Money in Trust.

The Company shall require each Paying Agent other than the Trustee to agree in writing that the Paying Agent will hold in trust, for the benefit of Securityholders of any Series of Securities, or the Trustee, all money held by the Paying Agent for the payment of principal of or interest on the Series of Securities, and will promptly notify the Trustee of any default by the Company in making any such payment. While any such default continues, the Trustee may require a Paying Agent to pay all money held by it to the Trustee. The Company at any time may require a Paying Agent to pay all money held by it to the Trustee. Upon payment over to the Trustee, the Paying Agent (if other than the Company or a Subsidiary of the Company) shall have no further liability for the money. If the Company or a Subsidiary of the Company acts as Paying Agent, it shall segregate and hold in a separate trust fund for the benefit of Securityholders of any Series of Securities all money held by it as Paying Agent.

#### Section 2.6. Securityholder Lists.

The Trustee shall preserve in as current a form as is reasonably practicable the most recent list available to it of the names and addresses of Securityholders of each Series of Securities and shall otherwise comply with TIA § 312(a). If the Trustee is not the Registrar, the Company shall furnish, or shall cause the Registrar to furnish, to the Trustee at least ten days before each interest payment date, but in any event at least once every six months, and at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing a list, in such form and as of such date as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of Securityholders of each Series of Securities.

#### Section 2.7. Transfer and Exchange.

Where Securities of a Series are presented to the Registrar or a co-registrar with a request to register a transfer or to exchange them for an equal principal amount of Securities of the same Series, the Registrar shall register the transfer or make the exchange if its requirements for such transactions are met. To permit registrations of transfers and exchanges, the Trustee shall authenticate Securities at the Registrar’s request. No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange (except as otherwise expressly permitted herein), but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any transfer tax or similar governmental charge payable in connection therewith (other than any such transfer tax or similar governmental charge payable upon exchanges pursuant to Sections 2.11, 3.6 or 9.6).

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Registrar) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Registrar duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

Neither the Company nor the Registrar shall be required (a) to issue, register the transfer of, or exchange Securities of any Series for the period beginning at the opening of business fifteen days immediately preceding the mailing of a notice of redemption of Securities of that Series selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (b) to register the transfer of or exchange Securities of any Series selected, called or being called for redemption as a whole or the portion being redeemed of any such Securities selected, called or being called for redemption in part.

#### Section 2.8. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery in exchange therefor a new Security of the same Series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and the Trustee (a) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security and (b) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute and upon its request the Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same Series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any Series issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that Series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

#### Section 2.9. Outstanding Securities.

Subject to Section 2.10, the Securities outstanding at any time are all the Securities authenticated by the Trustee except for those canceled by it, those delivered to it for cancellation, those reductions in the interest in a Global Security effected by the Trustee in accordance with the provisions hereof and those described in this Section as not outstanding.

If a Security is replaced pursuant to Section 2.8, it ceases to be outstanding until the Trustee receives proof satisfactory to it that the replaced Security is held by a bona fide purchaser.

If the Paying Agent (other than the Company, a Subsidiary of the Company or an Affiliate of the Company) holds as of 11:00 a.m. Eastern Time on the date of Maturity of Securities of a Series or on any day thereafter (in the case money is deposited by the Company following the date of Maturity) money sufficient to pay such Securities payable on such date of Maturity or on any such later date, as the case may be, then on and after such date of Maturity or such later date, as the case may be, such Securities of the Series cease to be outstanding and interest on them ceases to accrue.

A Security does not cease to be outstanding because the Company or an Affiliate of the Company holds the Security.

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of outstanding Securities have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder, the principal amount of a Discount Security that shall be deemed to be outstanding for such purposes shall be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable as of the date of such determination upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.2.

#### Section 2.10. Treasury Securities.

In determining whether the Holders of the required principal amount of Securities of a Series have concurred in any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, Securities of a Series owned by the Company or an Affiliate of the Company shall be disregarded, except that for the purposes of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver only Securities of a Series that a Responsible Officer of the Trustee knows are so owned shall be so disregarded.

#### Section 2.11. Temporary Securities.

Until definitive Securities are ready for delivery, the Company may prepare and the Trustee shall authenticate temporary Securities upon a Company Order. Temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of definitive Securities but may have variations that the Company considers appropriate for temporary Securities. Without unreasonable delay, the Company shall prepare and the Trustee upon request shall authenticate definitive Securities of the same Series and date of maturity in exchange for temporary Securities. Until so exchanged, temporary Securities shall have the same rights under this Indenture as the definitive Securities.

#### Section 2.12. Cancellation.

The Company at any time may deliver Securities to the Trustee for cancellation. The Registrar and the Paying Agent shall forward to the Trustee any Securities surrendered to them for registration of transfer, exchange, replacement or payment. The Trustee shall cancel all Securities surrendered for transfer, exchange, payment, replacement or cancellation and deliver such canceled Securities to the Company, unless the Company otherwise directs; provided that the Trustee shall not be required to destroy such Securities. The Company may not issue new Securities to replace Securities that it has paid or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

#### Section 2.13. Defaulted Interest.

If the Company defaults in a payment of interest on a Series of Securities, it shall pay the defaulted interest, plus, to the extent permitted by law, any interest payable on the defaulted interest, to the persons who are Securityholders of the Series on a subsequent special record date. The Company shall fix such special record date and the related payment date. At least 15 days before such special record date, the Company shall mail to the Trustee and to each Securityholder of the Series a notice that states such special record date, the related payment date and the amount of interest to be paid. The Company may pay defaulted interest in any other lawful manner.

Section 2.14. Special Record Dates.

(a) The Company may, but shall not be obligated to, set a record date for the purpose of determining the identity of Holders entitled to consent to any supplement, amendment or waiver permitted by this Indenture. If a record date is fixed, the Holders of such Series and Securities outstanding on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to consent to such supplement, amendment or waiver or revoke any consent previously given, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date. No consent shall be valid or effective for more than 90 days after such record date unless consents from Holders of the principal amount of such Series and Securities required hereunder for such amendment or waiver to be effective shall have also been given and not revoked within such 90-day period.

(b) The Company may, but shall not be obligated to, fix any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders of any Series of Securities entitled to join in the giving or making of any notice of Default, any declaration of acceleration, any request to institute proceedings or any other similar direction. If a record date is fixed, the Holders of such Series and Securities outstanding on such record date, and no other Holders, shall be entitled to join in such notice, declaration, request or direction, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided, however, that no such action shall be effective hereunder unless taken on or prior to the date 90 days after such record date.

(c) To the extent reasonably practicable, the Company shall give the Trustee a 15-day advance written notice of any special record date set in accordance with this Section 2.14.

Section 2.15. Global Securities.

(a) Terms of Securities. A Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate shall establish whether the Securities of a Series shall be issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities and the Depository for such Global Security or Securities.

(b) Transfer and Exchange. Notwithstanding any provisions to the contrary contained in Section 2.7 of the Indenture and in addition thereto, any Global Security shall be exchangeable pursuant to Section 2.7 of the Indenture for Securities registered in the names of Holders other than the Depository for such Security or its nominee only if (i) such Depository notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such Global Security or if at any time such Depository ceases to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act, and, in either case, the Company fails to appoint a successor Depository registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act within 90 days of such event, (ii) the Company executes and delivers to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate to the effect that such Global Security shall be so exchangeable (subject to the procedures of the Depository) or (iii) an Event of Default with respect to the Securities represented by such Global Security shall have happened and be continuing.

Any Global Security that is exchangeable pursuant to the preceding sentence shall be exchangeable for Securities registered in such names as the Depository shall direct in writing in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security with like tenor and terms.

Except as provided in this Section 2.15(b), a Global Security may not be transferred except as a whole by the Depository with respect to such Global Security to a nominee of such Depository, by a nominee of such Depository to such Depository or another nominee of such Depository or by the Depository or any such nominee to a successor Depository or a nominee of such a successor Depository.

(c) Legend. Any Global Security issued hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

“Unless this certificate is presented by an authorized representative of The Depository Trust Company, a New York corporation (“DTC”), New York, New York, to the issuer or its agent for registration of transfer, exchange or payment, and any certificate issued is registered in the name of Cede & Co. or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC (and any payment is made to Cede & Co. or such other entity as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC), **ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL** inasmuch as the registered owner hereof, Cede & Co. has an interest herein.”

”Transfer of this Global Security shall be limited to transfers in whole, but not in part, to DTC, to nominees of DTC or to a successor thereof or such successor’s nominee and limited to transfers made in accordance with the restrictions set forth in the Indenture referred to herein.”

(d) Acts of Holders. The Depository, as a Holder, may appoint agents and otherwise authorize participants to give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action which a Holder is entitled to give or take under the Indenture.

(e) Payments. Notwithstanding the other provisions of this Indenture, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.2, payment of the principal of and interest, if any, on any Global Security shall be made to the Holder thereof.

(f) Consents, Declaration and Directions. Except as provided in Section 2.15(e), the Company, the Trustee and any Agent shall treat a person as the Holder of such principal amount of outstanding Securities of such Series represented by a Global Security as shall be specified in a written statement of the Depository with respect to such Global Security, for purposes of obtaining any consents, declarations, waivers or directions required to be given by the Holders pursuant to this Indenture.

#### Section 2.16. CUSIP Numbers.

The Company in issuing the Securities may use “CUSIP” and/or other similar security identifying numbers (if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall use “CUSIP” numbers (and/or any such other security identifying numbers) in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other elements of identification printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers.

#### Section 2.17. Persons Deemed Owners.

Prior to due presentment of a Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the person in whose name such Security is registered in the register kept by the Registrar as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of and (subject to the record date provisions thereof) interest on and any Additional Amounts with respect to, such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not any payment with respect to such Security shall be overdue, and none of



the Company, the Trustee or any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary. The Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the bearer of a Bearer Security as the absolute owner thereof for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of and interest on and any Additional Amounts with respect to, such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not any payment with respect to such Security shall be overdue, and none of the Company, the Trustee or any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

No holder of any beneficial interest in any Global Security held on its behalf by a Depository shall have any rights under this Indenture with respect to such Global Security, and such Depository may be treated by the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee as the owner of such Global Security for all purposes whatsoever. None of the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or the Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of a Global Security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

### ARTICLE III. REDEMPTION

#### Section 3.1. Notice to Trustee.

The Company may, with respect to any Series of Securities, reserve the right to redeem and pay the Series of Securities or may covenant to redeem and pay the Series of Securities or any part thereof prior to the Stated Maturity thereof at such time and on such terms as provided for in such Securities. If a Series of Securities is redeemable and the Company wants or is obligated to redeem prior to the Stated Maturity thereof all or part of the Series of Securities pursuant to the terms of such Securities, it shall notify the Trustee of the redemption date and the principal amount of Series of Securities to be redeemed. The Company shall give the notice at least 35 days before the redemption date (or such shorter notice as may be acceptable to the Trustee).

#### Section 3.2. Selection of Securities to be Redeemed.

Unless otherwise indicated for a particular Series by a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture or an Officer's Certificate, if less than all the Securities of a Series are to be redeemed, the Trustee shall select the Securities of the Series to be redeemed by such method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate.

In the event of partial redemption, the Trustee shall make the selection from Securities of the Series outstanding not previously called for redemption. The Trustee may select for redemption a portion of the principal amount of any Security of such Series; provided that the unredeemed portion of the principal amount of any Security shall be in an authorized denomination (which shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination) for such Security. Provisions of this Indenture that apply to Securities of a Series called for redemption also apply to portions of Securities of that Series called for redemption.

#### Section 3.3. Notice of Redemption.

Unless otherwise indicated for a particular Series by Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate, at least 30 days but not more than 60 days before a redemption date, the Company shall mail a notice of redemption by first-class mail to each Holder whose Securities are to be redeemed and if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish on one occasion a notice in an Authorized Newspaper, except that redemption notices may be mailed more than 60 days prior to a redemption date if the notice is issued in connection with a defeasance of the Series of Securities or a satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture pursuant to Articles VIII or XI hereof.

The notice shall identify the Securities of the Series to be redeemed and shall state:

- (a) the redemption date;

- (b) the redemption price (or if not then ascertainable, the manner of calculation thereof);
- (c) the name and address of the Paying Agent;
- (d) that Securities of the Series called for redemption must be surrendered to the Paying Agent to collect the redemption price;
- (e) that interest on Securities of the Series called for redemption ceases to accrue on and after the redemption date;
- (f) the CUSIP number, if any; and
- (g) any other information as may be required by the terms of the particular Series or the Securities of a Series being redeemed.

Any notice of redemption may be given prior to the redemption thereof, any such redemption of notice may, at the Company's discretion, be subject to one or more conditions precedent, including, but not limited to, completion of a qualified equity offering or other corporation transaction. At the Company's request, the Trustee shall give the notice of redemption in the Company's name and at its expense.

#### Section 3.4. Effect of Notice of Redemption.

Once notice of redemption is mailed or published as provided in Section 3.3, Securities of a Series called for redemption become due and payable on the redemption date and at the redemption price specified in such notice. If money sufficient to pay the redemption price of and accrued interest on the Securities of a Series to be redeemed is deposited with the Trustee on or before the redemption date, on and after the redemption date interest will cease to accrue on the Securities of a Series (or such portions thereof) called for redemption and such Securities will cease to be outstanding. Upon surrender to the Paying Agent, such Securities shall be paid at the redemption price plus accrued interest to the redemption date; provided that, unless otherwise specified with respect to such Securities pursuant to Section 2.2 hereof, installments of interest whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the redemption date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities (or one or more predecessor Securities) registered at the close of business on the relevant record date therefor according to their terms and the terms of this Indenture.

#### Section 3.5. Deposit of Redemption Price.

On or before the redemption date, the Company shall deposit with the Paying Agent money sufficient to pay the redemption price of and accrued interest, if any, on all Securities to be redeemed on that date.

#### Section 3.6. Securities Redeemed in Part.

Upon surrender of a Security that is redeemed in part, the Trustee shall authenticate for the Holder a new Security of the same Series and the same maturity equal in principal amount to the unredeemed portion of the Security surrendered.

### ARTICLE IV. COVENANTS

#### Section 4.1. Payment of Principal and Interest.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each Series of Securities that it will pay or cause to be paid the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest on, the Securities of that Series on the dates and in the manner provided in such Securities. Principal of, and premium, if any, and interest on any Series of Securities will be considered paid on the date due if the Paying Agent, if other than the Company or a Subsidiary thereof, holds as of 11:00 a.m. Eastern Time on the due date money deposited by the Company in immediately available funds and designated for and sufficient to pay all principal, premium, if any, and interest then due.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each Series of Securities that it will pay interest (including post-petition interest in any proceeding under any Bankruptcy Law) on overdue principal with respect to such Securities at the rate specified therefor in the Securities; it will pay interest (including post-petition interest in any proceeding under any Bankruptcy Law) on overdue installments of interest (without regard to any applicable grace period) at the same rate to the extent lawful.

#### Section 4.2. Additional Amounts.

If any Securities of a Series provide for the payment of Additional Amounts, the Company agrees to pay to the Holder of any such Security Additional Amounts as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or such Securities. Whenever in this Indenture there is mentioned, in any context, the payment of the principal of or interest on, or in respect of, any Security of any Series, such mention shall be deemed to include mention of the payment of Additional Amounts provided by the terms of such Series established hereby or pursuant hereto to the extent that, in such context, Additional Amounts are, were or would be payable in respect thereof pursuant to such terms, and express mention of the payment of Additional Amounts (if applicable) in any provision hereof shall not be construed as excluding Additional Amounts in those provisions hereof where such express mention is not made.

#### Section 4.3. Maintenance of Office or Agency.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each Series of Securities that it will maintain an office or agency (which may be an office of the Trustee for such Securities or an Affiliate of such Trustee, Registrar for such Securities or co-registrar) where such Securities may be surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of such Securities and this Indenture may be served. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee for such Securities of the location, and any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company fails to maintain any such required office or agency or fails to furnish such Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of such Trustee.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where Holders of a Series of Securities may present or surrender such Securities for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee for such Series of Securities of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency.

With respect to each Series of Securities, the Company hereby designates the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee for such Securities as one such office or agency of the Company in accordance with Section 2.4 hereof.

#### Section 4.4. SEC Reports.

Unless otherwise specified with respect to Securities of a particular Series pursuant to Section 2.2, the Company will, if and to the extent required under the TIA, so long as any securities of a particular Series are outstanding:

(a) make available to the Trustee and the Holders of Securities copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports which the Company may be required to file with the SEC pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, provided that for this purpose the filing with the SEC of such reports, information and documents shall be sufficient; or

(b) if the Company is not then subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, make available to the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities (including by means of a public or private website), substantially similar periodic information (excluding exhibits) which would be required to be included in periodic reports on Form 10-K, 10-Q and 8-K (or any successor form or forms) under the Exchange Act within the time periods set forth in the applicable SEC rules and regulations as if the Company were a non-accelerated filer as defined in such applicable SEC rules and regulations, *provided* that in each case such information may be subject to exclusions if the Company in good faith determines that such excluded information would not be material to the interests of the holders of any Series of Securities.

The delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee pursuant to this Section 4.4 is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officer's Certificates).

#### Section 4.5. Compliance Certificate.

(a) The Company and each Guarantor of any Series of Securities (to the extent that such guarantor is so required under the TIA) shall deliver to the Trustee with respect to such Series, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, an Officers' Certificate stating that a review of the activities of the Company and its Subsidiaries during the preceding fiscal year has been made under the supervision of the signing Officers with a view to determining whether the Company has kept, observed, performed and fulfilled its obligations under this Indenture, and further stating, as to each such Officer signing such certificate, that to the best of his or her knowledge the Company has kept, observed, performed and fulfilled each and every covenant contained in this Indenture and is not in default in the performance or observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (or, if a Default or Event of Default has occurred, describing all such Defaults or Events of Default of which he or she may have knowledge and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto) and that to the best of his or her knowledge no event has occurred and remains in existence by reason of which payments on account of the principal of or interest, if any, on the Series of Securities is prohibited or if such event has occurred, a description of the event and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto.

(b) So long as any Series of Securities is outstanding, the Company will deliver to the Trustee with respect to such Series, forthwith upon any Officer becoming aware of any Default or Event of Default, an Officers' Certificate specifying such Default or Event of Default and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto.

#### Section 4.6. Taxes.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each Series of Securities that it will pay, and will cause each of its Subsidiaries to pay, prior to delinquency, all material taxes, assessments, and governmental levies except such as are contested in good faith and by appropriate proceedings or where the failure to effect such payment is not adverse in any material respect to the Holders of such Securities.

#### Section 4.7. Stay, Extension and Usury Laws.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each Series of Securities (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not, and each Guarantor of such Securities will not, at any time insist upon, plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay, extension or usury law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, that may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company and each such Guarantor (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law, and covenants that it will not, by resort to any such law, hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee for such Securities, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law has been enacted.

Section 4.8. Corporate Existence.

Subject to Article V hereof, the Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each Series of Securities that it shall do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its legal existence and rights and franchises; provided, however, that the foregoing shall not obligate the Company to preserve any such right or franchise if the Company shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of its business and that the loss thereof is not disadvantageous in any material respect to any Holder.

ARTICLE V.  
SUCCESSORS

Section 5.1. Merger, Consolidation, or Sale of Assets.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each Series of Securities that it shall not, directly or indirectly: (a) consolidate or merge with or into another person (whether or not the Company is the surviving corporation) or (b) sell, assign, transfer, lease, convey or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of the properties or assets of the Company and its Subsidiaries taken as a whole, in one or more related transactions, to another person, unless:

(i) the Company shall be the continuing entity, or the resulting, surviving or transferee person shall be a corporation, partnership, limited liability company, trust or other entity organized and validly existing under the laws of any domestic or foreign jurisdiction, and such successor person (if not the Company) shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, all the obligations of the Company under the Securities and this Indenture and, for each Security that by its terms provides for conversion, shall have provided for the right to convert such Security in accordance with its terms;

(ii) immediately after such transaction, no Default or Event of Default exists; and

(iii) the Company shall deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental indenture comply with this Article V and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

This Section 5.1 will not apply to:

(1) a merger of the Company with an Affiliate solely for the purpose of reincorporating the Company in another jurisdiction; or

(2) any consolidation or merger, or any sale, assignment, transfer, conveyance, lease or other disposition of assets between or among the Company and its Subsidiaries.

Section 5.2. Successor Person Substituted.

Upon any consolidation or merger, or any sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties or assets of the Company in a transaction that is subject to, and that complies with the provisions of, Section 5.1 hereof, the successor person formed by such consolidation or into or with which the Company is merged or to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for (so that from and after the date of such consolidation, merger, sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition, the provisions of this Indenture referring to the "Company" shall refer instead to the successor person and not to the Company), and may exercise every right and power of the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor person had been named as the Company herein; provided, however, that the predecessor Company shall not be relieved from the obligation to pay the principal of and interest on any Series of Securities except in the case of a sale of all of the Company's assets in a transaction that is subject to, and that complies with the provisions of, Section 5.1 hereof.

ARTICLE VI.  
DEFAULTS AND REMEDIES

Section 6.1. Events of Default.

”Event of Default,” wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any Series, means any one of the following events, unless in the establishing Board Resolution, supplemental indenture or Officers’ Certificate, it is provided that such Series shall not have the benefit of said Event of Default:

(a) default in the payment of any interest on any Security of that Series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or

(b) default in payment when due of the principal of, or premium, if any, on any Security of that Series; or

(c) default, for 90 days after receipt of written notice given by the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Securities of that Series then outstanding, in the performance or breach of any Covenant for the benefit of the holders of the Securities of that Series (other than a default referred to in clauses (a) and (b) above and other than a Covenant which has been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of any Series of Securities other than that Series); or

(d) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law:

(i) commences a voluntary case,

(ii) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case,

(iii) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property,

(iv) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors, or

(v) generally is unable to pay its debts as the same become due; or

(e) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order or decree under any Bankruptcy Law that:

(i) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case,

(ii) appoints a Custodian of the Company or for all or substantially all of its property, or

(iii) orders the liquidation of the Company, and the order or decree remains unstayed and in effect for 60 days; or

(f) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that Series, which is specified in a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers’ Certificate, in accordance with Section 2.2.

The term “Bankruptcy Law” means title 11, U.S. Code or any similar Federal or State law for the relief of debtors. The term “Custodian” means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

A Default under clause (d) above is not an Event of Default with respect to a particular Series of Securities until the Trustee notifies the Company, or the Holders of more than 25% in principal amount of the then outstanding Securities of that Series notify the Company and the Trustee of the Default, and the Company does not cure the Default within 90 days after receipt of the notice. The notice must specify the Default, demand that it be remedied and state that the notice is a “Notice of Default.” Such notice shall be given by the Trustee if so requested in writing by the Holders of more than 25% of the principal amount of the then outstanding Securities of that Series.

Section 6.2. Acceleration.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any Series at the time outstanding occurs and is continuing (other than an Event of Default referred to in Section 6.1(e) or (f)) then in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of more than 25% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series may declare the principal amount (or, if any Securities of that Series are Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms of such Securities) of and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all of the Securities of that Series to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified amount) and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in Section 6.1(e) or (f) shall occur, the principal amount (or specified amount) of and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all outstanding Securities shall ipso facto become and be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustee or any Holder.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to any Series has been made, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that Series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if the rescission would not conflict with any judgment or decree of a court of competent jurisdiction.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 6.3. Other Remedies.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any Series at the time outstanding occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may pursue any available remedy to collect the payment of principal of and, premium, if any, and interest on such Securities or to enforce the performance of any provision of such Securities or this Indenture.

The Trustee for such Securities may maintain a proceeding even if it does not possess any of such Securities or does not produce any of them in the proceeding. A delay or omission by the Trustee or any Holder of Securities in exercising any right or remedy accruing upon an Event of Default shall not impair the right or remedy or constitute a waiver of or acquiescence in the Event of Default. All remedies are cumulative to the extent permitted by law.

#### Section 6.4. Waiver of Past Defaults.

Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding Securities of any Series by notice to the Trustee for such Securities may on behalf of the Holders of all of such Securities waive an existing Default or Event of Default with respect to such Securities and its consequences hereunder, except a continuing Default or Event of Default in the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, such Securities or in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article IX cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each outstanding Security of the Series affected; provided, however, that the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding Securities of any Series may rescind an acceleration of such Securities and its consequences, including any related payment default that resulted from such acceleration, in accordance with Section 6.2. Upon any such waiver, such Default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

#### Section 6.5. Control by Majority.

Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding Securities of any Series may direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for exercising any remedy available to the Trustee for such Securities or exercising any trust or power conferred on it. However, the Trustee for any Series of Securities may refuse to follow any direction that conflicts with law or this Indenture that such Trustee determines may be unduly prejudicial to the rights of other Holders of such Securities or that may involve the Trustee in personal liability.

#### Section 6.6. Limitation on Suits.

A Holder of any Series of Securities may pursue a remedy with respect to this Indenture or such Securities only if:

- (a) such Holder gives to the Trustee for such Securities written notice that an Event of Default with respect to such Series is continuing;
- (b) Holders of more than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding Securities of such Series make a written request to the Trustee for such Securities to pursue the remedy;
- (c) such Holder or Holders offer and, if requested, provide to the Trustee for such Securities security or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to such Trustee against any loss, liability or expense;
- (d) such Trustee does not comply with the request within 90 days after receipt of the request and the offer of security or indemnity; and
- (e) during such 90-day period, Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding Securities of such Series do not give such Trustee a direction inconsistent with such request.

A Holder of any Series of Securities may not use this Indenture to prejudice the rights of another Holder of such Series of Securities or to obtain a preference or priority over another Holder of Securities of such Series.

#### Section 6.7. Rights of Holders of Securities to Receive Payment.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture, the right of any Holder of a Security of any Series to receive payment of principal of and, premium, if any, and interest on such Securities, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Securities (including, if applicable, in connection with an offer to purchase), or to bring suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such Holder.



Section 6.8. Collection Suit by Trustee.

If an Event of Default specified in Section 6.1(a), (b) or (c) hereof with respect to Securities of any Series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee for such Securities is authorized to recover judgment in its own name and as trustee of an express trust against the Company for the whole amount of principal of and, premium, if any, and interest remaining unpaid on, such Securities and interest on overdue principal and, to the extent lawful, overdue interest and such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of such Trustee, its agents and counsel.

Section 6.9. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.

The Trustee for each Series of Securities is authorized to file such proofs of claim and other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of such Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of such Trustee, its agents and counsel) and the Holders of the Securities for which it acts as trustee allowed in any judicial proceedings relative to the Company (or any other obligor upon such Securities), its creditors or its property and shall be entitled and empowered to collect, receive and distribute any money or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and any custodian in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder of such Securities to make such payments to such Trustee, and in the event that such Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to such Holders, to pay to such Trustee any amount due to it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of such Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due such Trustee under the Indenture. To the extent that the payment of any such compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of such Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due such Trustee out of the estate in any such proceeding, shall be denied for any reason, payment of the same shall be secured by a Lien on, and shall be paid out of, any and all distributions, dividends, money, securities and other properties that such Holders may be entitled to receive in such proceeding whether in liquidation or under any plan of reorganization or arrangement or otherwise. Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize such Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder for which it acts as trustee any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of such Holder, or to authorize such Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any such Holder in any such proceeding.

Section 6.10. Priorities.

If the Trustee of any Series of Securities collects any money pursuant to this Article VI, it shall pay out the money in the following order:

*First:* to the Trustee, its agents and attorneys for amounts due under the Indenture, including payment of all compensation, expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and the costs and expenses of collection;

*Second:* to Holders of such Securities for amounts due and unpaid on such Securities for principal, premium, if any, and interest, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal, premium, if any and interest, respectively; and

*Third:* to the Company or to such party as a court of competent jurisdiction shall direct.

Subject to Section 2.14 hereof, the Trustee may fix a record date and payment date for any payment to Holders of Securities pursuant to this Section 6.10.

Section 6.11. Undertaking for Costs.

In any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture or in any suit against any Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as a trustee, a court in its discretion may require the filing by any party litigant in the suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of the suit, and the court in its discretion may assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in the suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by the party litigant. This Section 6.11 does not apply to a suit by the Trustee, a suit by a Holder of a Security pursuant to Section 6.6 hereof, or a suit by Holders of more than 10% in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding Securities of any Series.

ARTICLE VII.  
TRUSTEE

Section 7.1. Duties of Trustee.

(a) Subject to Section 7.2(h), if an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of such person's own affairs.

(b) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default:

(i) The Trustee need perform only those duties that are specifically set forth in this Indenture and no others.

(ii) In the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon Officers' Certificates or Opinions of Counsel furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; however, in the case of any such Officers' Certificates or Opinions of Counsel which by any provisions hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall examine such Officers' Certificates and Opinions of Counsel to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture.

(c) The Trustee may not be relieved from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) This paragraph does not limit the effect of paragraph (b) of this Section.

(ii) The Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer, unless it is proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts.

(iii) The Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it with respect to Securities of any Series in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such Series relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such Series.

(d) Every provision of this Indenture that in any way relates to the Trustee is subject to paragraph (a), (b) and (c) of this Section.

(e) The Trustee may refuse to perform any duty or exercise any right or power at the request or direction of any Holder unless it receives indemnity satisfactory to it against any loss, liability or expense.

(f) The Trustee shall not be liable for interest on any money received by it except as the Trustee may agree in writing with the Company. Money held in trust by the Trustee need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

(g) No provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk is not reasonably assured to it.

(h) The Paying Agent, the Registrar and any authenticating agent shall be entitled to the protections, immunities and standard of care as are set forth in paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) of this Section with respect to the Trustee.

Section 7.2. Rights of Trustee.

(a) The Trustee may rely on and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper person. The Trustee need not investigate any fact or matter stated in the document.

(b) Before the Trustee acts or refrains from acting, it may require an Officers' Certificate. The Trustee shall not be liable for any action it takes or omits to take in good faith in reliance on such Officers' Certificate.

(c) The Trustee may act through agents and shall not be responsible for the misconduct or negligence of any agent appointed with due care. No Depository shall be deemed an agent of the Trustee and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any act or omission by any Depository.

(d) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action it takes or omits to take in good faith which it believes to be authorized or within its rights or powers, provided that the Trustee's conduct does not constitute negligence or bad faith.

(e) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders of Securities unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction.

(f) The Trustee may consult with counsel of its selection and the advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder without negligence and in good faith and in reliance thereon.

(g) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit.

(h) The Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice of any Default or Event of Default unless a Responsible Officer of the Trustee has actual knowledge thereof or unless written notice of any event which is in fact such a default is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and such notice references the Securities generally or the Securities of a particular Series and this Indenture.

(i) The Trustee shall not be required to provide any bond or surety with respect to the execution of these trusts and powers.

### Section 7.3. Individual Rights of Trustee.

The Trustee in its individual or any other capacity may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and may otherwise deal with the Company or an Affiliate of the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee. Any Agent may do the same with like rights. The Trustee is also subject to Sections 7.10 and 7.11

### Section 7.4. Trustee's Disclaimer.

The Trustee makes no representation as to the validity or adequacy of this Indenture or the Securities, it shall not be accountable for the Company's use of the proceeds from the Securities, and it shall not be responsible for any statement in the Securities other than its authentication of such Securities.

### Section 7.5. Notice of Defaults.

If a Default or Event of Default occurs and is continuing with respect to the Securities of any Series and if it is known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, the Trustee shall mail to each Securityholder of the Securities of that Series and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, mail in the manner provided by in TIA § 313(c), notice of a Default or Event of Default within 90 days after it occurs. Except in the case of a Default or Event of Default in payment of principal of or interest on any Security of any Series, the Trustee may withhold the notice if and so long as its corporate trust committee or a committee of its Responsible Officers in good faith determines that withholding the notice is in the interests of Securityholders of that Series.

### Section 7.6. Reports by Trustee to Holders.

Within 60 days after May 15 in each year following the issuance of a Series of Securities under this Indenture, the Trustee shall transmit by mail to all Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear on the register kept by the Registrar and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, transmit by mail in accordance with TIA § 313(c), a brief report dated as of such May 15, in accordance with, and to the extent required under, TIA § 313(a).

A copy of each report at the time of its mailing to Securityholders of any Series shall be filed by the Trustee with the SEC and each stock exchange on which the Securities of that Series are listed, if any. The Company shall promptly notify the Trustee when Securities of any Series are listed on any stock exchange.

### Section 7.7. Compensation and Indemnity.

The Company shall pay to the Trustee from time to time such compensation for its services as the Company and the Trustee shall agree upon in writing. The Trustee's compensation shall not be limited by any law on compensation of a trustee of an express trust. The Company shall reimburse the Trustee upon request for all reasonable out-of-pocket expenses incurred by it. Such expenses shall include the reasonable compensation and expenses of the Trustee's agents and counsel.

The Company shall indemnify each of the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee (including the cost of defending itself) against any loss, liability or expense, including taxes (other than taxes based upon, measured by or determined by the income of the Trustee) incurred by it except as set forth in the next paragraph in the performance of its duties under this Indenture as Trustee or Agent. The Trustee shall notify the Company promptly of any claim for which it may seek indemnity. The Company shall defend the claim and the Trustee shall cooperate in the defense. The Trustee may have one separate counsel and the Company shall pay the reasonable fees and expenses of such counsel. The Company need not pay for any settlement made without its consent, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. This indemnification shall apply to officers, directors, employees, shareholders and agents of the Trustee.

The Company need not reimburse any expense or indemnify against any loss or liability incurred by the Trustee or by any officer, director, employee, shareholder or agent of the Trustee through negligence or bad faith.

To secure the Company's payment obligations in this Section, the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities of any Series on all money or property held or collected by the Trustee pursuant to Section 8.4, except that held in trust to pay principal of and interest on particular Securities of that Series.

When the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services after an Event of Default specified in Section 6.1(e) or (f) occurs, the expenses and the compensation for the services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under any Bankruptcy Law.

The provisions of this Section shall survive the termination of this Indenture.

#### Section 7.8. Replacement of Trustee.

A resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor Trustee shall become effective only upon the successor Trustee's acceptance of appointment as provided in this Section.

The Trustee may resign with respect to the Securities of one or more Series by so notifying the Company at least 30 days prior to the date of the proposed resignation. The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any Series may remove the Trustee with respect to that Series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company. The Company may remove the Trustee with respect to Securities of one or more Series if:

- (a) the Trustee fails to comply with Section 7.10;
- (b) the Trustee is adjudged a bankrupt or an insolvent or an order for relief is entered with respect to the Trustee under any Bankruptcy Law;
- (c) a Custodian or public officer takes charge of the Trustee or its property; or
- (d) the Trustee becomes incapable of acting.

If the Trustee resigns or is removed with respect to the Securities of a Series or if a vacancy exists in the office of Trustee for any reason, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series. Within one year after the successor Trustee takes office, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding Securities of such Series may appoint a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series to replace the successor Trustee appointed by the Company.

If a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any one or more Series does not take office within 60 days after the retiring Trustee resigns or is removed, the retiring Trustee, the Company or the Holders of at least

10% in principal amount of the Securities of the applicable Series may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

A successor Trustee shall deliver a written acceptance of its appointment to the retiring Trustee and to the Company. Immediately after that, the retiring Trustee shall transfer all property held by it as Trustee to the successor Trustee subject to the lien provided for in Section 7.7, the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective, and the successor Trustee shall have all the rights, powers and duties of the Trustee with respect to each Series of Securities for which it is acting as Trustee under this Indenture. A successor Trustee shall mail a notice of its succession to each Securityholder of each such Series and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, publish such notice on one occasion in an Authorized Newspaper. Notwithstanding replacement of the Trustee pursuant to this Section 7.8, the Company's obligations under Section 7.7 hereof shall continue for the benefit of the retiring Trustee with respect to expenses and liabilities incurred by it prior to such replacement.

Section 7.9. Successor Trustee by Merger, etc.

If the Trustee consolidates with, merges or converts into, or transfers all or substantially all of its corporate trust business to, another corporation, the successor corporation without any further act shall be the successor Trustee.

Section 7.10. Eligibility; Disqualification.

This Indenture shall always have a Trustee who satisfies the requirements of TIA § 310(a)(1) and (2) and does not violate the prohibitions in TIA § 310(a)(5). The Trustee shall always have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$25,000,000 as set forth in its most recent published annual report of condition. The Trustee shall comply with TIA § 310(b).

Section 7.11. Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.

The Trustee is subject to TIA § 311(a), excluding any creditor relationship listed in TIA § 311(b). A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to TIA § 311(a) to the extent indicated.

ARTICLE VIII.  
LEGAL DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE

Section 8.1. Option to Effect Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

The Company may at any time elect to have either Section 8.2 or 8.3 hereof be applied to all outstanding Securities of any Series upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Article VIII.

Section 8.2. Legal Defeasance and Discharge.

Upon the Company's exercise under Section 8.1 hereof of the option applicable to this Section 8.2, the Company and each Guarantor, if any, of such Securities will, subject to the satisfaction of the conditions set forth in Section 8.4 hereof, be deemed to have been discharged from its or their obligations with respect to all outstanding Securities of such Series (including the related guarantees, if any) on the date the conditions set forth below are satisfied (hereinafter, "Legal Defeasance"). For this purpose, Legal Defeasance means that the Company and such Guarantors will be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by the outstanding Securities of such Series (including the related guarantees, if any), which will thereafter be deemed to be "outstanding" only for the purposes of Section 8.5 hereof and the other Sections of this Indenture referred to in clauses (a) and (b) below, and to have satisfied all its or their other obligations under such Securities, such guarantees, if any, and this Indenture (and the Trustee for such Securities, on demand of and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following provisions which will survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder:

(a) the rights of Holders of outstanding Securities of such Series to receive payments in respect of the principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on, such Securities when such payments are due solely out of the trust referred to in Section 8.4 hereof;

(b) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Article II hereof;

(c) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee for such Securities hereunder and the Company's and the Guarantors', if any, obligations in connection therewith; and

(d) this Article VIII.

Subject to compliance with this Article VIII, the Company may exercise its option under this Section 8.2 notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under Section 8.3 hereof.

#### Section 8.3. Covenant Defeasance.

Upon the Company's exercise under Section 8.1 hereof of the option applicable to this Section 8.3, the Company and each of the Guarantors, if any, will, subject to the satisfaction of the conditions set forth in Section 8.4 hereof, be released from each of its or their obligations under the covenants contained in Sections 4.3, 4.4, 4.5, 4.6 and 4.7, Section 5.1, and covenants specified in a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate, in accordance with Section 2.2, with respect to the outstanding Securities of the applicable Series on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 8.4 hereof are satisfied (hereinafter, "Covenant Defeasance"), and such Securities will thereafter be deemed not "outstanding" for the purposes of any direction, waiver, consent or declaration or act of Holders of such Securities (and the consequences of any thereof) in connection with such covenants, but will continue to be deemed "outstanding" for all other purposes hereunder (it being understood that such Securities will not be deemed outstanding for accounting purposes). For this purpose, Covenant Defeasance means that, with respect to the outstanding Securities of such Series, the Company may omit to comply with and will have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such covenant, whether directly or indirectly, by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such covenant or by reason of any reference in any such covenant to any other provision herein or in any other document and such omission to comply will not constitute a Default or an Event of Default under Section 6.1 hereof, but, except as specified above, the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities will be unaffected thereby. In addition, upon the Company's exercise under Section 8.1 hereof of the option applicable to this Section 8.3, subject to the satisfaction of the conditions set forth in Section 8.4 hereof, Section 6.1(c) hereof will not constitute an Event of Default.

#### Section 8.4. Conditions to Legal or Covenant Defeasance.

In order to exercise either Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance under either Section 8.2 or 8.3 hereof with respect to Securities of any Series:

(a) the Company must irrevocably deposit with the Trustee for such Securities, in trust, solely for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, cash in Dollars, non-callable Government Securities, or a combination thereof, in such amounts as will be sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized investment bank, appraisal firm, or firm of independent public accountants, to pay the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest on, the outstanding Securities of such Series on the stated date for payment thereof or on the applicable redemption date, as the case may be, and the Company must specify whether such Securities are being defeased to such stated date for payment or to a particular redemption date;

(b) in the case of an election under Section 8.2 hereof, the Company must deliver to the Trustee for such Securities an Opinion of Counsel confirming that:

(1) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling; or

(2) since the date of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable federal income tax law,

in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such Opinion of Counsel shall confirm that, subject to customary assumptions and exclusions, the Holders and beneficial owners of the outstanding Securities of such Series will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Legal Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Legal Defeasance had not occurred;

(c) in the case of an election under Section 8.3 hereof, the Company must deliver to the Trustee for such Securities an Opinion of Counsel reasonably acceptable to the Trustee confirming that, subject to customary assumptions and exclusions, the Holders and beneficial owners of such Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Covenant Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Covenant Defeasance had not occurred;

(d) no Default or Event of Default with respect to such Securities shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit (other than a Default or Event of Default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit or the grant of any lien securing such borrowing or any similar and simultaneous deposit relating to other indebtedness and, in each case, the granting of liens in connection therewith);

(e) such Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any material agreement or instrument (other than this Indenture) to which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is a party or by which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is bound (other than that resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit or the grant of any lien securing such borrowing or any similar and simultaneous deposit relating to other indebtedness and, in each case, the granting of liens in connection therewith);

(f) the Company must deliver to the Trustee for such Securities an Officers' Certificate stating that the deposit was not made by the Company with the intent of preferring the Holders of such Securities over the other creditors of the Company with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding any creditors of the Company or others; and

(g) the Company must deliver to the Trustee for such Securities an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel (which opinion of counsel may be subject to customary assumptions and exclusions), each stating that all conditions precedent relating to the Legal Defeasance or the Covenant Defeasance have been complied with.

#### Section 8.5. Deposited Money and Government Securities to be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions.

Subject to Section 8.6 hereof, all money and non-callable Government Securities (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee, collectively for purposes of this Section 8.5, the "Trustee") pursuant to Section 8.4 hereof in respect of the outstanding Securities of any Series will be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal, premium, if any, and interest, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

The Company will pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the cash or non-callable Government Securities deposited pursuant to Section 8.4 hereof or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of the outstanding Securities of the applicable Series.



Notwithstanding anything in this Article VIII to the contrary, the Trustee will deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon the request of the Company any money or non-callable Government Securities held by it as provided in Section 8.4 hereof which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized investment bank, appraisal firm or firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee (which may be the opinion delivered under Section 8.4 hereof), are in excess of the amount thereof that would then be required to be deposited to effect an equivalent Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

Section 8.6. Repayment to Company.

Any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, any Series of Securities and remaining unclaimed for one year after such principal, premium, if any, or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on its request or (if then held by the Company) will be discharged from such trust; and the Holders of such Securities will thereafter be permitted to look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, will thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in an Authorized Newspaper, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which will not be less than 30 days from the date of such notification or publication, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

Section 8.7. Reinstatement.

If, in connection with a Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance, the Trustee or Paying Agent is unable to apply any Dollars or non-callable Government Securities in accordance with Section 8.5, by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the Company's and any applicable Guarantors' obligations under this Indenture and the applicable Securities and the guarantees will be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 8.2 or 8.3 hereof until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money in accordance with Section 8.5; provided, however, that, if the Company makes any payment of principal of or interest on any such Securities following the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company will be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the money held by the Trustee or Paying Agent.

ARTICLE IX.  
AMENDMENTS AND WAIVERS

Section 9.1. Without Consent of Holders.

Notwithstanding Section 9.2 of this Indenture, the Company and the Trustee may amend or supplement this Indenture or the Securities of one or more Series without the consent of any Securityholder:

- (a) to cure any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency;
- (b) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities;
- (c) to provide for the assumption of the Company's obligations to the Holders of the Securities by a successor to the Company pursuant to Article V hereof;
- (d) to add any additional Events of Default with respect to all or any Series of Securities outstanding hereunder;
- (e) to secure the Securities pursuant to the requirements of any covenant on liens in respect of such series of Securities or otherwise;
- (f) to change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture, or to add any new provision to this Indenture, in respect of one or more series of Securities; provided, however, that any such change,

elimination or addition (A) shall neither (i) apply to any Security outstanding on the date of such indenture supplemental hereto nor (ii) modify the rights of the Holder of any such Security with respect to such provision in effect prior to the date of such indenture supplemental hereto or (B) shall become effective only when no Security of such series remains outstanding;

(g) to make any change that would provide any additional rights or benefits to the Holders of Securities or that does not adversely affect the Holders' rights hereunder in any material respect;

(h) to comply with requirements of the SEC in order to effect or maintain the qualification of this Indenture under the TIA;

(i) to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of Securities of any Series as permitted by this Indenture;

(j) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more Series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee;

(k) to add an additional Guarantor or obligor under this Indenture; or

(l) to conform any provision of this Indenture, the Securities of any Series or any related guarantees or security documents to the description of such Securities contained in the Company's prospectus, prospectus supplement, offering memorandum or similar document with respect to the offering of the Securities of such Series to the extent that such description was intended to be a verbatim recitation of a provision in the Indenture, such Securities or any related guarantees or security documents.

Upon the request of the Company and upon receipt by the Trustee of the documents described in Section 12.4 hereof, the Trustee will join with the Company in the execution of any amended or supplemental indenture authorized or permitted by the terms of this Indenture and to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations that may be therein contained, but the Trustee will not be obligated to enter into such amended or supplemental indenture that affects its own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

#### Section 9.2. With Consent of Holders.

The Company and the Trustee may enter into a supplemental indenture with the written consent of the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of each Series affected by such supplemental indenture (including consents obtained in connection with a tender offer or exchange offer for the Securities of such Series), for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Securityholders of each such Series. Except as provided in Section 6.4, the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of each Series by notice to the Trustee (including consents obtained in connection with a tender offer or exchange offer for the Securities of such Series) may waive compliance by the Company with any provision of this Indenture or the Securities with respect to such Series.

It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Holders of Securities under this Section 9.2 to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture or waiver, but it shall be sufficient if such consent approves the substance thereof. Upon the request of the Company and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence satisfactory to the Trustee of the consent of the Holders of Securities as aforesaid, and upon receipt by the Trustee of the documents described in Section 12.4 hereof, the Trustee will join with the Company in the execution of such amended or supplemental indenture unless such amended or supplemental indenture directly affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion, but will not be obligated to, enter into such amended or supplemental Indenture.

After a supplemental indenture or waiver under this section becomes effective, the Company shall promptly mail to the Holders of Securities affected thereby and, if any Bearer Securities affected thereby are outstanding,

publish on one occasion in an Authorized Newspaper, a notice briefly describing the supplemental indenture or waiver. Any failure by the Company to mail or publish such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture or waiver.

### Section 9.3. Limitations.

Without the consent of each Securityholder affected, an amendment, supplement or waiver may not (with respect to any Securities held by a non-consenting Holder):

- (a) change the amount of Securities whose Holders must consent to an amendment, supplement or waiver;
- (b) reduce the rate of or extend the time for payment of interest (including default interest) on any Security;
- (c) reduce the principal or change the Stated Maturity of any Security or reduce the amount of, or postpone the date fixed for, the payment of any sinking fund or analogous obligation;
- (d) reduce the principal amount of Discount Securities payable upon acceleration of the maturity thereof;
- (e) waive a Default or Event of Default in the payment of the principal of or interest, if any, on any Security (except a rescission of acceleration of the Securities of any Series by the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such Series and a waiver of the payment default that resulted from such acceleration);
- (f) make the principal of or interest, if any, on any Security payable in any currency other than that stated in the Security;
- (g) make any change in Sections 6.4, 6.7 or 9.3; or
- (h) waive a redemption payment with respect to any Security.

### Section 9.4. Compliance with Trust Indenture Act.

Every amendment or supplement to this Indenture or the Securities of one or more Series shall be set forth in an amended or supplemental indenture that complies with the TIA as then in effect.

### Section 9.5. Revocation and Effect of Consents.

(a) Until an amendment, supplement or waiver becomes effective, a consent to it by a Holder of a Security is a continuing consent by the Holder and every subsequent Holder of a Security or portion of a Security that evidences the same debt as the consenting Holder's Security, even if notation of the consent is not made on any Security. However, any such Holder or subsequent Holder subject to Section 9.5(d) may revoke the consent as to his Security or portion of a Security if the Trustee receives the notice of revocation before the date the amendment, supplement or waiver becomes effective.

(b) An amendment, supplement or waiver effective in accordance with its terms will thereafter bind every Holder.

(c) For purposes of this Indenture, the consent of the Holder of a Global Security shall be deemed to include any consent delivered by any member of, or participant in, any Depository, any nominees thereof and their respective successors and assigns, or such other depository institution hereinafter appointed by the Company ("Depository Entity") by electronic means in accordance with the Automated Tender Offer Procedures system or other customary procedures of, and pursuant to authorization by, such Depository Entity.

(d) The Company may, but shall not be obligated to, fix a record date for the purpose of determining the Holders entitled to consent to any amendment, supplement or waiver. If a record date is fixed, then notwithstanding the last sentence of the immediately preceding paragraph, those persons who were Holders at such record date (or their duly designated proxies), and only those persons, shall be entitled to revoke any consent previously given, whether or not such persons continue to be Holders after such record date. No such consent shall be valid or effective for more than 120 days after such record date. The Company shall inform the Trustee of the fixed record date, if applicable.

(e) Any amendment or waiver once effective shall bind every Securityholder of each Series affected by such amendment or waiver unless it is of the type described in any of clauses (a) through (h) of Section 9.3. In that case, the amendment or waiver shall bind each Holder of a Security who has consented to it and every subsequent Holder of a Security or portion of a Security that evidences the same debt as the consenting Holder's Security.

Section 9.6. Notation on or Exchange of Securities.

The Trustee may place an appropriate notation about an amendment, supplement or waiver on any Security of any Series thereafter authenticated. The Company in exchange for Securities of that Series may issue and the Trustee shall authenticate upon request new Securities of that Series that reflect the amendment or waiver.

Section 9.7. Trustee Protected.

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article IX or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 7.1) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture.

ARTICLE X.  
GUARANTEES

Section 10.1. Guarantees.

Any Series of Securities may be guaranteed by one or more of the Guarantors. The terms and the form of any such guarantee will be established in the manner contemplated by Section 2.2 for that particular Series of Securities.

ARTICLE XI.  
SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

Section 11.1. Satisfaction and Discharge.

This Indenture will be discharged and will cease to be of further effect as to a Series of Securities issued hereunder, when:

(a) either:

(i) all such Securities that have been authenticated, except lost, stolen or destroyed Securities that have been replaced or paid and Securities for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust and thereafter repaid to the Company, have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(ii) all such Securities that have not been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation have become due and payable by reason of the mailing of a notice of redemption or otherwise or will become due and payable within one year and the Company has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust solely for the benefit of the Holders of such

Securities, cash in Dollars, non-callable Government Securities, or a combination thereof, in such amounts as will be sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not delivered to the Trustee for cancellation for principal, premium, if any, and accrued interest to the date of maturity or redemption;

(b) no Default or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing on the date of such deposit (other than a Default or Event of Default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit or the grant of any lien securing such borrowing or any similar and simultaneous deposit relating to other indebtedness and, in each case, the granting of liens in connection therewith) and the deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any other material instrument to which the Company or any Guarantor of such Securities is a party or by which the Company or any such Guarantor is bound (other than a breach, violation or default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit or the grant of any lien securing such borrowing or any similar and simultaneous deposit relating to other indebtedness and, in each case, the granting of liens in connection therewith);

(c) the Company or any Guarantor of such Securities has paid or caused to be paid all sums payable by it under this Indenture; and

(d) the Company has delivered irrevocable instructions to the Trustee for such Securities under this Indenture to apply the deposited money toward the payment of such Securities at maturity or on the redemption date, as the case may be.

In addition, the Company must deliver an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel to the Trustee for such Securities stating that all conditions precedent to satisfaction and discharge have been satisfied, and all fees and expenses of the Trustee shall have been paid.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, if money has been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (ii) of clause (a) of this Section 11.1, the provisions of Sections 11.2 and 8.6 hereof will survive. In addition, nothing in this Section 11.1 will be deemed to discharge those provisions of Section 7.7 hereof, that, by their terms, survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture.

#### Section 11.2. Application of Trust Money.

Subject to the provisions of Section 8.6 hereof, all money or Government Securities deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 11.1 hereof shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities with respect to with such deposit was made and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as such Trustee may determine, to the persons entitled thereto, of the principal (and premium, if any) and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustee; but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

If the Trustee or Paying Agent is unable to apply any money or Government Securities in accordance with Section 11.1 hereof by reason of any legal proceeding or by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, the Company's and any applicable Guarantor's obligations under this Indenture and the applicable Securities shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 11.1 hereof; provided that if the Company has made any payment of principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, any Securities because of the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the money or Government Securities held by the Trustee or Paying Agent.

ARTICLE XII.  
MISCELLANEOUS

Section 12.1. Trust Indenture Act Controls.

If any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies, or conflicts with another provision which is required or deemed to be included in this Indenture by the TIA, such required or deemed provision shall control.

Section 12.2. Notices.

Any notice or communication by the Company or the Trustee to the other, or by a Holder to the Company or the Trustee, is duly given if in writing and (a) delivered in person, (b) mailed by first-class mail or overnight mail, (c) sent by overnight air courier with next Business Day delivery or (d) delivered electronically (in .pdf or similar format) if, in case of electronic notices, receipt is confirmed:

if to the Company:

JAKKS Pacific, Inc.  
2951 28th Street  
Santa Monica, CA 90405  
Telephone No.: ( ) -  
Facsimile No.: ( ) -  
Attention: John Kimble

With a copy to:

Feder Kaszovitz LLP  
845 Third Avenue, 11<sup>th</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10022  
Telephone No.: (212) 888-8200  
Facsimile No.: (212) 888-7766  
Attention: Geoffrey A. Bass

if to the Trustee:

[Name of Trustee]  
[Address of Trustee]  
Telephone No.:  
Facsimile No.:  
Attention: \_\_\_\_\_

The Company or the Trustee by notice to the other may designate additional or different addresses for subsequent notices or communications.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

All notices and communications (other than those sent to Holders) will be deemed to have been duly given: at the time delivered by hand, if personally delivered; five Business Days after being deposited in the mail, postage prepaid, if mailed; the next Business Day after timely delivery to the courier, if sent by overnight air courier for next Business Day delivery; and when receipt is confirmed, if delivered electronically.

Any notice or communication to a Securityholder shall be mailed by first-class mail to his address shown on the register kept by the Registrar and, if any Bearer Securities are outstanding, published in an Authorized Newspaper, unless otherwise provided with respect to the applicable Series. Failure to mail a notice or communication to a Securityholder of any Series or any defect in it shall not affect its sufficiency with respect to other Securityholders of that or any other Series.

In case by reason of the suspension of regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice by mail, then such notification as shall be made with the approval of the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient notification for every purpose hereunder.

If a notice or communication is mailed or published in the manner provided above, within the time prescribed, it is duly given, whether or not the Securityholder receives it.

If the Company mails a notice or communication to Securityholders, it shall mail a copy to the Trustee and each Agent at the same time.

Where the Indenture provides for notice of any event to a Holder of a Global Security, such notice shall be sufficiently given if given to the Depository for such Global Security (or its designee), pursuant to the applicable procedures of the Depository, not later than the latest date (if any), and not earlier than the earliest date (if any), prescribed for the giving of such notice.

Section 12.3. Communication by Holders with Other Holders.

Securityholders of any Series may communicate pursuant to TIA § 312(b) with other Securityholders of that Series or any other Series with respect to their rights under this Indenture or the Securities of that Series or all Series. The Company, the Trustee, the Registrar and anyone else shall have the protection of TIA § 312(c).

Section 12.4. Certificate and Opinion as to Conditions Precedent.

Upon any request or application by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee:

(a) an Officers' Certificate stating that, in the opinion of the signers, all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with; and

(b) an Opinion of Counsel stating that, in the opinion of such counsel, all such conditions precedent have been complied with.

Section 12.5. Statements Required in Certificate or Opinion.

Each certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (other than a certificate provided pursuant to Section 4.5 hereof and TIA § 314(a)(4)) shall comply with the provisions of TIA § 314(e) and shall include:

(a) a statement that the person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition;

(b) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(c) a statement that, in the opinion of such person, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and

(d) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Section 12.6. Rules by Trustee and Agents.

The Trustee may make reasonable rules for action by or a meeting of Securityholders of one or more Series. Any Agent may make reasonable rules and set reasonable requirements for its functions.

Section 12.7. Legal Holidays.

Unless otherwise provided by Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture hereto for a particular Series, a "Legal Holiday" is any day that is not a Business Day. If a payment date is a Legal Holiday at a place of payment, payment may be made at that place on the next succeeding day that is not a Legal Holiday, and no interest shall accrue for the intervening period.

Section 12.8. No Recourse Against Others.

No past, present or future director, officer, stockholder or employee, as such, of the Company or any successor corporation shall have any liability for any obligation of the Company under the Securities or the Indenture or for any claim based on, in respect of or by reason of such obligations or their creation. Each Holder by accepting a Security waives and releases all such liability. The waiver and release are part of the consideration for the execution of this Indenture and the issue of the Securities.

Section 12.9. Counterparts.

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts and by the parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which when so executed shall be deemed to be an original and all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement.

Section 12.10. Governing Law; Waiver of Trial by Jury.

**THE LAW OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK WILL GOVERN AND BE USED TO CONSTRUE THIS INDENTURE, THE SECURITIES AND ANY GUARANTEES OF THE SECURITIES. EACH OF THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS INDENTURE OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED THEREBY.**



Section 12.11. No Adverse Interpretation of Other Agreements.

This Indenture may not be used to interpret any other indenture, loan or debt or other agreement of the Company or its Subsidiaries or of any other person. Any such indenture, loan or debt or other agreement may not be used to interpret this Indenture.

Section 12.12. Successors.

All agreements of the Company in this Indenture and the Securities shall bind its successor. All agreements of the Trustee in this Indenture shall bind its successor.

Section 12.13. Severability.

In case any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 12.14. Table of Contents, Headings, Etc.

The Table of Contents, Cross-Reference Table, and headings of the Articles and Sections of this Indenture have been inserted for convenience of reference only, are not to be considered a part hereof, and shall in no way modify or restrict any of the terms or provisions hereof.

Section 12.15. Securities in a Foreign Currency.

Unless otherwise specified in a Board Resolution, a supplemental indenture hereto or an Officers' Certificate delivered pursuant to Section 2.2 of this Indenture with respect to a particular Series of Securities, whenever for purposes of this Indenture any action may be taken by the Holders of a specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of Securities of all Series or all Series affected by a particular action at the time outstanding and, at such time, there are outstanding Securities of any Series which are denominated in a coin or currency other than Dollars, then the principal amount of Securities of such Series which shall be deemed to be outstanding for the purpose of taking such action shall be that amount of Dollars that could be obtained for such amount at the Market Exchange Rate at such time. For purposes of this Section 12.15, "Market Exchange Rate" shall mean the noon Dollar buying rate in New York City for cable transfers of that currency as published by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York. If such Market Exchange Rate is not available for any reason with respect to such currency, the Trustee shall use, in its sole discretion and without liability on its part, such quotation of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York as of the most recent available date, or quotations from one or more major banks in The City of New York or in the country of issue of the currency in question or such other quotations as the Trustee, upon consultation with the Company, shall deem appropriate. The provisions of this paragraph shall apply in determining the equivalent principal amount in respect of Securities of a Series denominated in currency other than Dollars in connection with any action taken by Holders of Securities pursuant to the terms of this Indenture.

All decisions and determinations of the Trustee regarding the Market Exchange Rate or any alternative determination provided for in the preceding paragraph shall be in its sole discretion and shall, in the absence of manifest error, to the extent permitted by law, be conclusive for all purposes and irrevocably binding upon the Company and all Holders.

### ARTICLE XIII. SINKING FUNDS

#### Section 13.1. Applicability of Article.

The provisions of this Article XIII shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of the Securities of a Series, except as otherwise permitted or required by any form of Security of such Series issued pursuant to this Indenture.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of the Securities of any Series is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment” and any other amount provided for by the terms of Securities of such Series is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment.” If provided for by the terms of Securities of any Series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 13.2. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any Series as provided for by the terms of the Securities of such Series.

#### Section 13.2. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

The Company may, in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of any Series to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities (a) deliver outstanding Securities of such Series to which such sinking fund payment is applicable (other than any of such Securities previously called for mandatory sinking fund redemption) and (b) apply as a credit Securities of such Series to which such sinking fund payment is applicable and which have been repurchased by the Company or redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Series of Securities (except pursuant to any mandatory sinking fund) or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments or other optional redemptions pursuant to the terms of such Securities, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received by the Trustee, together with an Officers’ Certificate with respect thereto, not later than 15 days prior to the date on which the Trustee begins the process of selecting Securities for redemption, and shall be credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly. If as a result of the delivery or credit of Securities in lieu of cash payments pursuant to this Section 13.2, the principal amount of Securities of such Series to be redeemed in order to exhaust the aforesaid cash payment shall be less than \$100,000, the Trustee need not call Securities of such Series for redemption, except upon receipt of a Company Order that such action be taken, and such cash payment shall be held by the Trustee or a Paying Agent and applied to the next succeeding sinking fund payment, provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent shall from time to time upon receipt of a Company Order pay over and deliver to the Company any cash payment so being held by the Trustee or such Paying Agent upon delivery by the Company to the Trustee of Securities of that Series purchased by the Company having an unpaid principal amount equal to the cash payment required to be released to the Company.

#### Section 13.3. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 45 days (unless otherwise indicated in the Board Resolution, supplemental indenture or Officers’ Certificate in respect of a particular Series of Securities) prior to each sinking fund payment date for any Series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment for that Series pursuant to the terms of that Series, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting of Securities of that Series pursuant to Section 13.2, and the optional amount, if any, to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, and the Company shall thereupon be obligated to pay the amount therein specified. Not less than 30 days (unless otherwise indicated in the Board Resolution, Officers’ Certificate or supplemental indenture in respect of a particular Series of Securities) before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.2 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.3. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 3.4, 3.5 and 3.6.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed as of the day and year first above written.

JAKKS PACIFIC, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

[TRUSTEE]

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

**FEDER KASZOVITZ LLP**  
ATTORNEYS AT LAW

**845 THIRD AVENUE**  
**NEW YORK, N. Y. 10022-1200**

Telefax: 212-888-7776

Telephone: 212-888-8200

Writer's Ext.: 5404

October 20, 2022

JAKKS Pacific, Inc.  
2951 28<sup>th</sup> Street  
Santa Monica, California 90405

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to JAKKS Pacific, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), in connection with the registration statement on Form S-3 (the "Registration Statement") filed on the date hereof by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), relating to the registration under the Securities Act, and the proposed issuance and sale from time to time pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act, of an indeterminate amount of the following securities:

(i) shares of common stock of the Company, \$0.001 par value per share ("Common Stock");

(ii) shares of preferred stock of the Company, \$0.001 par value per share ("Preferred Stock");

(iii) one or more series of debt securities of the Company (the "Debt Securities"), which Debt Securities may include senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities issued under an indenture, including any supplemental indenture related thereto, and may be convertible into or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock;

(iv) warrants representing the right to purchase, upon exercise, a number of shares of Common Stock, shares of Preferred Stock and/or Debt Securities ("Warrants");

(v) rights to purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock and/or Debt Securities as may be designated at the time of the offering at a future date or dates that will be issued under one or more purchase agreements ("Rights"); and

(vi) units of the Company consisting of two or more of any combination of Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Debt Securities or Warrants (the "Units").

The Common Stock, the Preferred Stock, the Debt Securities, the Warrants, the Rights and the Units are referred to herein collectively as the "Securities."

In connection with this opinion letter, we have examined such certificates, documents and records and have made such investigation of fact and such examination of law as we have deemed appropriate in order to enable us to render the opinions set forth herein. In conducting such investigation, we have relied, without independent verification, upon certificates of officers of the Company, public officials and other appropriate persons.

---

The opinions expressed below are limited to the laws of the State of New York and the Delaware General Corporation Law.

Based upon and subject to the foregoing and the assumptions, qualifications and limitations set forth below, we are of the opinion that:

1. When (i) the issuance and sale of any shares of Common Stock have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action of the Company and (ii) such shares have been issued and delivered against payment of the purchase price therefor (in an amount in excess of the par value thereof) in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or other agreement, and as contemplated by the Registration Statement, such shares of Common Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable. The Common Stock covered in the opinion in this paragraph includes any shares of Common Stock that may be issued upon exercise, conversion or exchange pursuant to the terms of any other Securities.

2. When (i) the terms of any Preferred Stock of a particular series and their issuance and sale have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action of the Company, (ii) a certificate of designations with respect to such series of Preferred Stock has been duly adopted by the Company and filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware and (iii) such shares of Preferred Stock have been issued and delivered against payment of the purchase price therefor (in an amount in excess of the par value thereof) in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or other agreement, and as contemplated by the Registration Statement, such shares of Preferred Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable. The Preferred Stock covered in the opinion in this paragraph includes any shares of Preferred Stock that may be issued upon exercise, conversion or exchange pursuant to the terms of any other Securities.

3. When (i) the terms of any Debt Securities and their issuance and sale have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action of the Company and (ii) such Debt Securities have been duly executed, authenticated and delivered against payment of the purchase price therefor in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, as contemplated by the Registration Statement, and in the manner provided for in the applicable indenture, such Debt Securities will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms. The Debt Securities covered in the opinion in this paragraph include any Debt Securities that may be issued upon exercise, conversion or exchange pursuant to the terms of any other Securities.

4. When (i) the terms of any Warrants and their issuance and sale have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action of the Company and (ii) such Warrants have been duly executed, countersigned and delivered in accordance with the applicable warrant agreement and against payment of the purchase price therefor in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or other agreement, and as contemplated by the Registration Statement, such Warrants will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms.

5. When (i) the terms of any Rights and their issuance and sale have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action of the Company and (ii) such Rights have been duly executed, countersigned and delivered in accordance with the applicable rights agreement and against payment of the purchase price therefor in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or other agreement, and as contemplated by the Registration Statement, such Rights will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms.

6. When (i) the terms of any Units (including the terms of the component Securities) and their sale have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action of the Company and (ii) such Units have been duly executed (if the Units are represented by a separate instrument) and delivered in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or other agreement, and as contemplated by the Registration Statement, such Units will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms.

---

In rendering the opinions set forth above, we have assumed that (i) the Registration Statement will have become effective under the Securities Act, a prospectus supplement will have been prepared and filed with the Commission describing the Securities offered thereby and such Securities will have been issued and sold in accordance with the terms of such prospectus supplement; (ii) a definitive purchase, underwriting, or similar agreement, and any applicable indenture (including any supplemental indenture) or warrant agreement, pursuant to which such Securities may be issued, will have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto, and the specific terms of such Securities will have been duly established in conformity with the applicable agreement and the certificate of incorporation and bylaws of the Company (if applicable); (iii) at the time of the issuance of any Securities, the Company will be a validly existing corporation under the law of its jurisdiction of incorporation; (iv) the number of shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as applicable, issued pursuant to the Registration Statement, together with the number of shares outstanding or reserved at the time of issuance, will not exceed the respective number of shares authorized by the Company's certificate of incorporation in effect at the time of such issuance; and (v) all the foregoing actions to be taken by the Company will have been taken so as not to violate any applicable law and so as to comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental or regulatory body having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its property.

Our opinions set forth above are subject to (a) bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, fraudulent conveyance and similar laws affecting the rights and remedies of creditors generally and (b) general principles of equity. Our opinions are also subject to the qualification that the enforceability of provisions in any applicable indenture (including any supplemental indenture thereto) providing for indemnification or contribution, broadly worded waivers, waivers of rights to damages or defenses, waivers of unknown or future claims, and waivers of statutory, regulatory or constitutional rights may be limited on public policy or statutory grounds. In addition, we express no opinion with respect to the enforceability of rights to receive prepayment premiums or the unaccrued portion of original issue discount upon acceleration of any Debt Securities, in each case to the extent determined to be unreasonable or to constitute unmatured interest or judgment currency provisions.

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion letter as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the use of our name therein and in the related prospectus under the caption "Legal Matters." In giving such consent, we do not thereby admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder.

Very truly yours,

/s/ FEDER KASZOVITZ LLP

**Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

JAKKS Pacific, Inc.  
Santa Monica, California

We hereby consent to the incorporation by reference in the Prospectus constituting a part of this Registration Statement of our report dated March 16, 2022, relating to the consolidated financial statements of JAKKS Pacific, Inc. appearing in the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2021.

We also consent to the reference to us under the caption "Experts" in the Prospectus.

/s/ BDO USA, LLP  
Los Angeles, California

October XX, 2022

## Calculation of Filing Fee Tables

**Form S-3**  
(Form Type)**JAKKS Pacific, Inc.**

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in its Charter)

Table 1—Newly Registered and Carry Forward Securities

	Security Type	Security Class Title	Fee Calculation or Carry Forward Rule	Amount Registered	Proposed Maximum Offering Price Per Unit	Maximum Aggregate Offering Price	Fee Rate	Amount of Registration Fee	Carry Forward Form Type	Carry Forward File Number	Carry Forward Initial effective date	Filing Fee Previously Paid In Connection with Unsold Securities to be Carried Forward
<b>Newly Registered Securities</b>												
Fees to Be Paid	Debt	Debt Securities	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	—	—	—	—
Fees to Be Paid	Equity	Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	—	—	—	—
Fees to Be Paid	Equity	Preferred Stock, par value \$0.001 per share	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	—	—	—	—
Fees to Be Paid	Other	Units(2)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	—	—	—	—
Fees to Be Paid	Other	Warrants	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	—	—	—	—
Fees to Be Paid	Other	Rights	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	—	—	—	—
Fees to be Paid	Unallocated (Universal) Shelf	Unallocated (Universal) Shelf	457(o)	(1)	(1)	\$124,710,000(1)	\$110.20 per \$1,000,000	\$13,743	—	—	—	—
Fees Previously Paid	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<b>Carry Forward Securities</b>												
Carry Forward Securities	Equity	Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share	415(a)(6)	(3)		\$25,290,000	\$92.70 per \$1,000,000	\$2,344	S-3	333-266009	July 29, 2022	\$2,344
	<b>Total Offering Amounts</b>					\$150,000,000(1)(3)		\$13,743				
	<b>Total Fees Previously Paid</b>							\$2,344				
	<b>Total Fee Offsets</b>							—				
	<b>Net Fee Due</b>							\$11,399				

(1) Pursuant to Instruction 2.A(iii)(b) of Item 16(b) of Form S-3, this information is not required to be included. An indeterminate amount of the securities of each identified class is being registered as may from time to time be offered under this registration statement at indeterminate prices, along with an indeterminate number of securities that may be issued upon exercise, settlement, exchange or conversion of securities offered or sold under this registrations statement, as shall have an aggregate initial offering price up to \$150,000,000. Pursuant to Rule 416 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, this registration statement also covers any additional securities that may be offered or issued in connection with any stock split, stock dividend or pursuant to anti-dilution provisions of any of the securities. Separate consideration may or may not be received for securities that are issuable upon conversion, exercise or exchange of other securities.

(2) Units may be issued under a unit agreement and will represent an interest in one or more securities registered under this registration statement including shares of common stock or preferred stock, debt securities or warrants, in any combination, which may or may not be separable from one another.

(3) Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, the securities registered pursuant to this registration statement include \$25,290,000 of unsold securities (the "Unsold Securities") previously registered pursuant to the Registration Statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-266009), which was declared effective on July 29, 2022 (the "Prior Registration Statement"). The Prior Registration Statement registered securities for primary offerings in accordance with Rule 415(a)(1)(x) with a proposed maximum aggregate offering price of \$25,290,000. The registrant did not sell any of such securities under the Prior Registration Statement, leaving all Unsold Securities, in respect of which the registrant paid an aggregate registration fee of \$2,344 (based on the filing fee rate in effect at the time of the filing of the Prior Registration Statement). Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6), the filing fee of \$2,344 associated with the offering of the Unsold Securities is hereby applied to offset the amount of the filing fee in connection with the \$124,710,000 additional securities registered hereunder. To the extent that, after the filing date hereof and prior to the effectiveness of this registration statement, the registrant sells any Unsold Securities pursuant to the Prior Registration Statement, the registrant will identify in a pre-effective amendment to this registration statement the updated number of Unsold Securities from the Prior Registration Statement to be included in this registration statement pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) and the updated amount of new securities to be registered on this registration statement. Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6), the offering of the Unsold Securities under the Prior Registration Statement will be deemed terminated as of the date of effectiveness of this registration statement.